

(19) World Intellectual Property  
Organization  
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date  
28 October 2004 (28.10.2004)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
WO 2004/092219 A2

(51) International Patent Classification: **C07K 16/00**  
// 16/28, 16/24

(74) Agents: HALLUIN, Albert P. et al.; HOWREY SIMON  
ARNOLD & WHITE, Box 34, 301 Ravenswood Avenue,  
Menlo Park, CA 94025 (US).

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/US2004/011213

(22) International Filing Date: 9 April 2004 (09.04.2004)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:  
60/462,014 10 April 2003 (10.04.2003) US  
60/475,762 3 June 2003 (03.06.2003) US  
60/499,048 29 August 2003 (29.08.2003) US  
10/687,118 15 October 2003 (15.10.2003) US

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): **PRO-  
TEIN DESIGN LABS, INC.** [US/US]; 34801 Campus  
Drive, Fremont, CA 94555 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): **HENTON, Paul  
R.** [US/US]; 321 Dunsuir Terrace, #4, Sunnyvale, CA  
94085 (US). **TSURUSHITA, Naoya** [JP/US]; 3719 Red-  
wood Circle, Palo Alto, CA 94306 (US). **TSO, J. Yun**  
[US/US]; 445 Oakgrove Avenue, #6, Menlo Park, CA  
94025 (US). **VASQUEZ, Maximiliano** [US/US]; 3813  
Louis Road, Palo Alto, CA 94303 (US).

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every  
kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM,  
AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN,  
CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI,  
GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE,  
KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD,  
MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NA, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG,  
PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SY, TJ, TM,  
TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM,  
ZW.

(84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every  
kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH,  
GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW),  
Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), Euro-  
pean (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR,  
GB, GR, HU, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK,  
TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW,  
ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— without international search report and to be republished  
upon receipt of that report

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guid-  
ance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the begin-  
ning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: ALTERATION OF FCγR BINDING AFFINITIES OR SERUM HALF-LIVES OF ANTIBODIES BY MUTAGENESIS

(57) Abstract: The present invention provides for a modified antibody of class IgG, in which at least one amino acid from the heavy chain constant region selected from the group consisting of amino acid residues 250, 314, and 428 is substituted with another amino acid which is different from that present in the unmodified antibody, thereby altering the binding affinity for FCγR and/or the serum half-life in comparison to the unmodified antibody.

## ALTERATION OF FcRn BINDING AFFINITIES OR SERUM HALF-LIVES OF ANTIBODIES BY MUTAGENESIS

### FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to the fields of immunology and protein engineering.

- 5 In particular, it concerns modified antibodies of class IgG that have altered binding affinities for FcRn, or altered serum half-lives as a consequence of one or more amino acid modifications in the Fc region thereof.

### BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Antibodies are proteins that exhibit binding specificity to a particular antigen.

- 10 Native (i.e., naturally occurring or wild-type) antibodies are usually heterotetrameric glycoproteins of about 150,000 daltons, composed of two identical light (L) chains and two identical heavy (H) chains. As shown in Figure 1, each light chain is linked to a heavy chain by one covalent disulfide bond, while the number of disulfide linkages varies between the heavy chains of different immunoglobulin isotypes. Each heavy chain has at one end a  
15 variable domain ( $V_H$ ) followed by a number of constant domains. Each light chain has a variable domain ( $V_L$ ) at one end and a constant domain at the other end. The constant domain of the light chain is aligned with the first constant domain of the heavy chain.

- Certain portions of the variable domains differ extensively in sequence among antibodies and are responsible for the binding specificity of each particular antibody to its  
20 particular antigen. The constant domains are not involved directly in binding of an antibody to an antigen, but exhibit various effector functions. Depending on the amino acid sequence of the constant region of the heavy chains, antibodies or immunoglobulins can be assigned to different classes. There are five major classes (isotypes) of immunoglobulins in humans: IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM, and several of these may be further divided into subclasses  
25 (subtypes), such as IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4 as well as IgA1 and IgA2.

- A schematic representation of the native IgG structure is shown in Figure 1, where the various portions of the native antibody molecule are indicated. The heavy chain constant region includes  $C_{H1}$ , the hinge region,  $C_{H2}$ , and  $C_{H3}$ . Papain digestion of antibodies produces two fragments, Fab and Fc. The Fc fragment consists of  $C_{H2}$ ,  $C_{H3}$ , and  
30 part of the hinge region. The crystal structure of the human IgG1 Fc fragment has been determined (Deisenhofer, Biochemistry 20:2361-2370 (1981)). In human IgG molecules, the Fc fragment is generated by papain cleavage of the hinge region N-terminal to Cys 226.

Therefore, the human IgG heavy chain Fc region is usually defined as stretching from the amino acid residue at position 226 to the C-terminus (numbered according to the EU index of Kabat, et al., "Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest", 5<sup>th</sup> ed., National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD (1991); the EU numbering scheme is used hereinafter).

- 5           The Fc region is essential to the effector functions of antibodies. The effector functions include initiating complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC), initiating phagocytosis and antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC), and transferring antibodies across cellular barriers by transcytosis. In addition, the Fc region is critical for maintaining the serum half-life of an antibody of class IgG (Ward and Ghetie, Ther. Immunol. 2:77-94 (1995)).

- Studies have found that the serum half-life of an IgG antibody is mediated by binding of Fc to the neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn). FcRn is a heterodimer consisting of a transmembrane  $\alpha$  chain and a soluble  $\beta$  chain ( $\beta$ 2-microglobulin). FcRn shares 22-29% sequence identity with Class I MHC molecules and has a non-functional version of the MHC peptide-binding groove (Simister and Mostov, Nature 337:184-187 (1989)). The  $\alpha$ 1 and  $\alpha$ 2 domains of FcRn interact with the C<sub>H</sub>2 and C<sub>H</sub>3 domains of the Fc region (Raghavan et al., Immunity 1:303-315 (1994)).

- A model has been proposed for how FcRn might regulate the serum half-life of an antibody. As shown in Figure 2, IgGs are taken up by endothelial cells through non-specific pinocytosis and then enter acidic endosomes. FcRn binds IgG at acidic pH (<6.5) in endosomes and releases IgG at basic pH (>7.4) in the bloodstream. Accordingly, FcRn salvages IgG from a lysosomal degradation pathway. When serum IgG levels decrease, more FcRn molecules are available for IgG binding so that an increased amount of IgG is salvaged. Conversely, if serum IgG levels rise, FcRn becomes saturated, thereby increasing the proportion of pinocytosed IgG that is degraded (Ghetie and Ward, Annu. Rev. Immunol. 18:739-766 (2000)).

- Consistent with the above model, the results of numerous studies support a correlation between the affinity for FcRn binding and the serum half-life of an antibody (Ghetie and Ward, *ibid.*). Significantly, such a correlation has been extended to engineered antibodies with higher affinity for FcRn than their wild-type parent molecules.

          Ghetie et al. randomly mutagenized position 252, position 254, and position 256 in a mouse IgG1 Fc-hinge fragment. One mutant showed an affinity three and a half times higher for mouse FcRn and a half-life about 23% or 65% longer in two mouse strains,

respectively, as compared to that of the wild-type (Ghetie et al., Nat. Biotechnol. 15:637-640 (1997)).

Shields et al. used alanine scanning mutagenesis to alter residues in the Fc region of a human IgG1 antibody and then assessed the binding to human FcRn. They found several  
5 mutants with a higher binding affinity for human FcRn than the wild-type, but did not identify mutations at positions 250, 314, or 428 (Shields et al., J. Biol. Chem. 276:6591-6604 (2001)).

Martin et al. proposed mutagenesis at a number of positions in the human IgG Fc to increase binding to FcRn including, among many others, positions 250, 314, and 428.  
10 However, none of the mutants proposed by Martin et al. was constructed or tested for binding to FcRn (Martin et al., Mol. Cell 7:867-877 (2001)).

Dall'Acqua et al. described random mutagenesis and screening of human IgG1 hinge-Fc fragment phage display libraries against mouse FcRn. They disclosed random mutagenesis of positions 428-436 but did not identify mutagenesis at position 428 as having  
15 any effect on mouse FcRn binding affinity and stated that the wild-type methionine amino acid at this position is favorable for efficient binding (Dall'Acqua et al., J. Immunol. 169:5171-5180 (2002)).

Kim et al. mutagenized human IgG1 by amino acid substitutions at position 253, position 310, or position 435 of the Fc region. They found that the mutant Fc-hinge  
20 fragments have reduced serum half-lives in mice compared to the wild-type IgG1 Fc-hinge fragment, and concluded that Ile253, His310, and His435 play a central role in regulating the serum half-life of IgG (Kim et al., Eur. J. Immunol. 29:2819-2825 (1999)).

Hornick et al. showed that a single amino acid substitution at position 253 in the Fc region of a chimeric human IgG1 antibody accelerates clearance in mice and improves  
25 immunoscintigraphy of solid tumors (Hornick et al., J. Nucl. Med. 41:355-362 (2000)).

U.S. Patent No. 6,165,745 discloses a method of producing an antibody with a decreased biological half-life by introducing a mutation into the DNA segment encoding the antibody. The mutation includes an amino acid substitution at position 253, 310, 311, 433, or 434 of the Fc-hinge domain. The full disclosure of U.S. Patent No. 6,165,745, as well as  
30 the full disclosure of all other U.S. Patent references cited herein, are hereby incorporated by reference.

U.S. Patent Nos. 5,530,101; 5,585,089; 5,693,761; 5,693,762; and 6,180,370 disclose the humanization of immunoglobulins.

U.S. Patent No. 6,277,375 B1 discloses a composition comprising a mutant IgG molecule having an increased serum half-life relative to the wild-type IgG, wherein the mutant IgG molecule comprises the amino acid substitutions: threonine to leucine at position 252, threonine to serine at position 254, or threonine to phenylalanine at position 256. A mutant IgG with an amino acid substitution at position 433, 435, or 436 is also disclosed.

U.S. Patent Application No. 20020098193 A1 and PCT Publication No. WO 97/34621 disclose mutant IgG molecules having increased serum half-lives relative to IgG wherein the mutant IgG molecule has at least one amino acid substitution in the Fc-hinge region. However, no experimental support is provided for mutations at positions 250, 314, or 428.

U.S. Patent No. 6,528,624 discloses a variant of an antibody comprising a human IgG Fc region, which variant comprises an amino acid substitution at one or more of amino acid positions 270, 322, 326, 327, 329, 331, 333, and 334 of the human IgG Fc region.

PCT Publication No. WO 98/05787 discloses deleting or substituting amino acids at positions 310-331 of the BR96 antibody in order to reduce its induced toxicity, but does not disclose amino acid modifications that result in altered binding to FcRn.

PCT Publication No. WO 00/42072 discloses a polypeptide comprising a variant Fc region with altered FcRn binding affinity, which polypeptide comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 265, 272, 286, 288, 303, 305, 307, 309, 311, 312, 317, 340, 356, 360, 362, 376, 378, 380, 386, 388, 400, 413, 415, 424, 433, 434, 435, 436, 439, and 447 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.).

PCT Publication No. WO 02/060919 A2 discloses a modified IgG comprising an IgG constant domain comprising one or more amino acid modifications relative to a wild-type IgG constant domain, wherein the modified IgG has an increased half-life compared to the half-life of an IgG having the wild-type IgG constant domain, and wherein the one or more amino acid modifications are at one or more of positions 251, 253, 255, 285-290, 308-314, 385-389, and 428-435. However, no examples of mutations at positions 314 or 428 with altered binding to FcRn are disclosed.

Martin, W.L. (Doctoral dissertation entitled, "Protein-Protein Recognition: The Neonatal Fc Receptor and Immunoglobulin G," California Institute of Technology (2001)) proposes theoretical mutations at several Fc positions of the rat gamma-2a constant region, including positions 250 and 428, that may increase FcRn binding affinity. Martin suggests

the possibility of substituting, among others, isoleucine for valine at position 250, or substituting phenylalanine for leucine at position 428. Martin does not suggest any substitution for position 314. Martin does not demonstrate increased binding affinity to FcRn for any of these proposed mutations.

- 5           The above-referenced publications have not showed that the serum half-life or FcRn binding affinity of an antibody of the IgG class can be altered by the amino acid modifications at position 250, position 314, or position 428 of the Fc region. The present invention used molecular modeling to select Fc residues near the FcRn contact site that might have an effect on binding, but may not be necessary for pH-dependent binding.
- 10       Amino acid modifications were made at position 250, 314, or 428 of the constant region of an immunoglobulin heavy chain of class IgG. The serum half-lives or FcRn binding affinities of antibodies comprising said modifications were altered and, therefore, were different from those of unmodified antibodies.

### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

- 15       The present invention is based upon the inventors' identification of several mutations in the constant domain of a human IgG molecule that alter (i.e., increase or decrease) the affinity of the IgG molecule for FcRn. The present invention provides for modified antibodies having altered FcRn binding affinity and/or serum half-life relative to the corresponding unmodified antibody. The *in vivo* half-life (i.e. persistence in serum or other
- 20       tissues of a subject) of antibodies, and other bioactive molecules, is an important clinical parameter that determines the amount and frequency of antibody (or any other pharmaceutical molecule) administration. Accordingly, such molecules, including antibodies, with increased (or decreased) half-life are of significant pharmaceutical importance.
- 25       The present invention relates to a modified molecule (preferably an antibody), that has an increased (or decreased) *in vivo* half-life by virtue of the presence of a modified IgG constant domain (preferably from a human IgG), or FcRn-binding portion thereof (preferably the Fc or hinge-Fc domain) wherein the IgG constant domain, or fragment thereof, is modified (preferably by an amino acid substitution) to increase (or decrease) the
- 30       affinity for the FcRn.

In a particular embodiment, the present invention relates to modified class IgG antibodies, whose *in vivo* half-lives are extended (or reduced) by the changes in amino acid residues at positions identified by structural studies to be involved either directly or

indirectly in the interaction of the hinge-Fc domain with the FcRn receptor. In a preferred embodiment the modified class IgG antibody is selected from the group consisting of daclizumab, fontolizumab, visilizumab and M200.

5 In preferred embodiments, the constant domain (or fragment thereof) has a higher affinity for FcRn at pH 6.0 than at pH 7.4. That is, the pH dependency of FcRn binding affinity mimics the wild-type pH dependency. In alternative embodiments, the modified antibodies of the present invention may exhibit altered pH dependence profiles relative to that of the unmodified antibody. Such altered pH dependence profiles may be useful in some therapeutic or diagnostic applications.

10 In some embodiments, the antibody modifications of the present invention will alter FcRn binding and/or serum half-life without altering other antibody effector functions such as ADCC or CDC. In particularly preferred embodiments, the modified antibodies of the invention exhibit no changes in binding to Fc-gamma receptors or C1q. In alternative  
15 (or decreased) effector functions as well as increased serum half-life. In particularly preferred embodiments, the modified antibodies of the invention may have increased (or decreased) ADCC activities as well as increased serum half-life.

It should be noted that the modifications of the present invention may also alter (i.e., increase or decrease) the bioavailability (e.g., transport to mucosal surfaces, or other target  
20 tissues) of the modified antibodies (or other molecules).

In preferred embodiments, the present invention provides for a modified antibody of class IgG, in which at least one amino acid from the heavy chain constant region selected from the group consisting of amino acid residues 250, 314, and 428 is substituted with an amino acid residue different from that present in the unmodified antibody. Preferably this  
25 substitution alters the binding affinity for FcRn and/or the serum half-life of said modified antibody relative to the unmodified wild-type antibody. The present invention further provides for a modified antibody having an increased binding affinity for FcRn and an increased serum half-life as compared with the unmodified antibody, wherein amino acid  
30 residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with glutamic acid or glutamine; or amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with phenylalanine or leucine.

The present invention further provides for a modified antibody having an increased binding affinity for FcRn and/or an increased serum half-life as compared with the unmodified antibody, wherein (a) amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant

region is substituted with glutamic acid and amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with phenylalanine; (b) amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with glutamine and amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with phenylalanine; or (c) amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with glutamine and amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with leucine.

The present invention further provides for a modified antibody having a reduced binding affinity for FcRn and/or a reduced serum half-life as compared with the unmodified antibody, wherein amino acid residue 314 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with another amino acid which is different from that present in an unmodified antibody.

The present invention further provides for a modified antibody having a reduced binding affinity for FcRn and/or a reduced serum half-life as compared with the unmodified antibody, wherein amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, lysine, phenylalanine, proline, tryptophan, or tyrosine; or amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with alanine, arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, cysteine, glutamic acid, glutamine, glycine, histidine, lysine, proline, serine, threonine, tyrosine, or valine.

The present invention also provides for an antibody having a constant region substantially identical to a naturally occurring class IgG antibody constant region wherein at least one amino acid residue selected from the group consisting of residues 250, 314, and 428 is different from that present in the naturally occurring class IgG antibody, thereby altering FcRn binding affinity and/or serum half-life of said antibody relative to the naturally occurring antibody. In preferred embodiments, the naturally occurring class IgG antibody comprises a heavy chain constant region of a human IgG1, IgG2, IgG2M3, IgG3 or IgG4 molecule. Also in preferred embodiments, amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region of the antibody having a constant region substantially identical to the naturally occurring class IgG antibody is glutamic acid or glutamine; or amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is phenylalanine or leucine. In other preferred embodiments, the antibody having a constant region substantially identical to a naturally occurring class IgG antibody has a glutamic acid residue at position 250 and phenylalanine residue at position 428; or amino acid residue 250 is glutamine and amino acid residue 428 is phenylalanine; or amino acid residue 250 is glutamine and amino acid residue 428 is leucine.



In some embodiments, the antibody having a constant region substantially identical to a naturally occurring class IgG antibody constant region includes an amino acid residue at position 314 different from that present in the naturally occurring antibody, thereby reducing FcRn binding affinity and/or reducing serum half-life relative to the naturally occurring antibody. Embodiments include antibodies wherein amino acid residue 314 is alanine, arginine, aspartic acid, asparagine, cysteine, glutamic acid, glutamine, glycine, histidine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, proline, serine, threonine, tryptophan, tyrosine, or valine. In one preferred embodiment amino acid residue 314 is arginine.

In other embodiments, the antibody having a constant region substantially identical to a naturally occurring class IgG antibody constant region includes an amino acid residue at position 250 selected from the group consisting of arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, lysine, phenylalanine, proline, tryptophan, or tyrosine, thereby reducing FcRn binding affinity and/or reducing serum half-life relative to the naturally occurring antibody. Similarly, the amino acid residue at position 428 may be substituted with an amino acid residue selected from the group consisting of alanine, arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, cysteine, glutamic acid, glutamine, glycine, histidine, lysine, proline, serine, threonine, tyrosine, or valine, thereby reducing FcRn binding affinity and/or reducing serum half-life relative to the naturally occurring antibody.

The present invention further provides for a method of modifying an antibody of class IgG, wherein said method comprises substituting at least one amino acid from the heavy chain constant region selected from the group consisting of amino acid residues 250, 314, and 428 with an amino acid which is different from that present in an unmodified antibody, thereby causing an alteration of the binding affinity for FcRn and/or the serum half-life of said unmodified antibody.

The present invention further provides for a method of producing a modified antibody of class IgG with an altered binding affinity for FcRn and/or an altered serum half-life as compared with an unmodified antibody, wherein said method comprises:

- (a) preparing an expression vector (preferably a replicable expression vector) comprising a suitable promoter operably linked to DNA encoding at least a constant region of an immunoglobulin heavy chain wherein at least one amino acid from the heavy chain constant region selected from the group consisting of amino acid residues 250, 314, and 428 is substituted with an amino acid which is different from that present in an unmodified antibody thereby causing an alteration in FcRn binding affinity and/or serum half-life;
- (b) transforming host cells with said vector; and

(c) culturing said transformed host cells to produce said modified antibody.

Optionally, such a method further comprises: preparing a second expression vector (preferably a replicable expression vector) comprising a promoter operably linked to DNA encoding a complementary immunoglobulin light chain and further transforming said cell  
5 line with said second vector.

The present invention also includes pharmaceutical compositions and methods of prophylaxis and therapy using modified immunoglobulins (including immunoglobulins conjugated with toxins and radionuclides), proteins and other bioactive molecules of the invention having altered half-lives. Also included are methods of diagnosis using modified  
10 immunoglobulins, proteins and other bioactive molecules of the invention having altered half-lives. In preferred embodiments, the amino acid modifications of the present invention may be used to extend the serum half-life of a therapeutic or diagnostic antibody. For example, the present invention provides for a modified therapeutic or diagnostic antibody of class IgG with an *in vivo* elimination half-life at least about 1.3-fold longer than that of the  
15 corresponding unmodified antibody. The modified therapeutic or diagnostic antibody wherein at least one amino acid residue selected from the group consisting of residues 250, 314, and 428 is different from that present in the unmodified antibody. In preferred embodiments the modified therapeutic or diagnostic antibody has an *in vivo* elimination half-life at least about 1.3-fold, 1.5-fold, 1.8-fold, 1.9-fold, or greater than 2.0-fold longer  
20 than that of the corresponding unmodified antibody.

The present invention also provides for a modified therapeutic or diagnostic antibody of class IgG with an *in vivo* clearance at least about 1.3-fold lower than that of the corresponding unmodified antibody. The modified therapeutic or diagnostic antibody wherein at least one amino acid residue selected from the group consisting of residues 250,  
25 314, and 428 is different from that present in the unmodified antibody. In preferred embodiments the modified therapeutic or diagnostic antibody has an *in vivo* clearance at least about 1.3-fold, 1.5-fold, 1.8-fold, 2.0-fold, 2.3-fold, 2.5-fold, 2.8-fold, or greater than 3.0-fold lower than that of the corresponding unmodified antibody. In a preferred embodiment the therapeutic antibody is selected from the group consisting of daclizumab,  
30 fontolizumab, visilizumab and M200.

The present invention further provides for a modified therapeutic or diagnostic antibody of class IgG with an *in vivo* area under the concentration-time curve at least about 1.3-fold higher than that of the corresponding unmodified antibody. The modified therapeutic or diagnostic antibody wherein at least one amino acid residue selected from the

group consisting of residues 250, 314, and 428 is different from that present in the unmodified antibody. In preferred embodiments the modified therapeutic or diagnostic antibody has an *in vivo* elimination half-life at least about 1.3-fold, 1.5-fold, 1.8-fold, 2.0-fold, 2.3-fold, 2.6-fold, 2.8-fold, or greater than 3.0-fold higher than that of the corresponding unmodified antibody.

In alternative preferred embodiments, the amino acid modifications of the present invention may also be used to reduce the serum half-life of a therapeutic or diagnostic antibody. Such therapeutic or diagnostic antibodies are well-known in the art and listed in the following description of the invention.

The invention also provides a modified therapeutic antibody comprising a light chain amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 118 and a heavy chain amino acid sequence selected from SEQ ID NOs: 119-128. The invention also provides a vector comprising a polynucleotide encoding one or more of these light or heavy chain amino acid sequences. This invention further provides a host cell comprising this vector.

In addition the invention provides: a modified therapeutic antibody comprising a light chain amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 129 and a heavy chain amino acid sequence selected from SEQ ID NOs: 130-134; a modified therapeutic antibody comprising a light chain amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 135 and a heavy chain amino acid sequence selected from SEQ ID NOs: 136-140; and a modified therapeutic antibody comprising a light chain amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 141 and a heavy chain amino acid sequence selected from SEQ ID NOs: 142-146. The invention also provides vectors comprising one or more of the heavy and/or light chain amino acid sequences of the above-listed modified therapeutic antibodies; and the invention provides a host cell comprising any of the above listed vectors.

## BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Figure 1. Illustration of the Structure of an IgG Molecule

Figure 2. Salvage Pathway of IgG Molecules

Figure 3A. Amino Acid Sequences of OST577-IgG2M3 and OST577-IgG1 with Positions 250, 314, and 428 of the Heavy Chain Highlighted

“OST577-VH” (SEQ ID NO: 1) depicts the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain variable region of OST577-IgG2M3 or OST577-IgG1. “IgG2M3-CH” (SEQ ID NO: 2) depicts the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of OST577-IgG2M3.

“IgG1-CH” (SEQ ID NO: 3) depicts the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of OST577-IgG1. “OST577-VL” (SEQ ID NO: 4) depicts the amino acid sequence of the light chain variable region of OST577-IgG2M3 or OST577-IgG1. “LAMBDA2-CL” (SEQ ID NO: 5) depicts the amino acid sequence of the light chain constant region of OST577-IgG2M3 or OST577-IgG1.

Figure 3B. Amino Acid Sequences of the Constant Regions of the Modified OST577-IgG2M3 in Comparison with the Unmodified OST577-IgG2M3 (See Table 1 for the SEQ ID NO of each disclosed amino acid sequence).

Figure 3C. Amino Acid Sequences of the Constant Regions of the Modified OST577-IgG1 in Comparison with the Unmodified OST577-IgG1

Figure 3D. Amino Acid Sequences of Hu1D10-IgG2M3 and Hu1D10-IgG1 with Positions 250, 314, and 428 of the Heavy Chain Highlighted

“Hu1D10-VH” (SEQ ID NO: 6) depicts the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain variable region of Hu1D10-IgG2M3 or Hu1D10-IgG1. “IgG2M3-CH” (SEQ ID NO: 2) depicts the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of Hu1D10-IgG2M3. “IgG1-CH” (SEQ ID NO: 7) depicts the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of Hu1D10-IgG1. “Hu1D10-VL” (SEQ ID NO: 8) depicts the amino acid sequence of the light chain variable region of Hu1D10-IgG2M3 or Hu1D10-IgG1. “KAPPA-CL” (SEQ ID NO: 9) depicts the amino acid sequence of the light chain constant region of Hu1D10-IgG2M3 or Hu1D10-IgG1.

Figure 3E. Amino Acid Sequences of the Constant Regions of the Modified Hu1D10-IgG2M3 in Comparison with the Unmodified Hu1D10-IgG2M3

Figure 3F. Amino Acid Sequences of the Constant Regions of the Modified Hu1D10-IgG1 in Comparison with the Unmodified Hu1D10-IgG1

Figure 3G. Amino Acid Sequences of Hu1D10-IgG3 and Hu1D10-IgG4 with Positions 250 and 428 of the Heavy Chain Highlighted. “Hu1D10-VH” (SEQ ID NO: 6) depicts the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain variable region of Hu1D10-IgG3 or Hu1D10-IgG4. “IgG3-CH” (SEQ ID NO: 113) depicts the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of Hu1D10-IgG3. “IgG4-CH” (SEQ ID NO: 114) depicts the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of Hu1D10-IgG4. “Hu1D10-VL” (SEQ ID NO: 8) depicts the amino acid sequence of the light chain variable region of Hu1D10-IgG3 or

Hu1D10-IgG4. "KAPPA-CL" (SEQ ID NO: 9) depicts the amino acid sequence of the light chain constant region of Hu1D10-IgG3 or Hu1D10-IgG4.

Figure 3H. Amino Acid Sequences of the Constant Regions of the M428L Hu1D10-IgG3 Mutant (SEQ ID NO:115) in Comparison with the Unmodified Hu1D10-IgG3

- 5 Figure 3I. Amino Acid Sequences of the Constant Regions of the M428L Hu1D10-IgG4 (SEQ ID NO:116) and T250Q/M428L Hu1D10-IgG4 (SEQ ID NO:117) Mutants in Comparison with the Unmodified Hu1D10-IgG4

Figure 4. Illustration of the Overlap-Extension PCR Method

Figure 5A. Restriction Map of Heavy Chain Vector pVAg2M3-OST577

- 10 Figure 5B. Restriction Map of Heavy Chain Vector pVAg1.N-OST577

Figure 6. Restriction Map of Light Chain Vector pVA $\lambda$ 2-OST577

Figure 7A. Restriction Map of Heavy Chain Vector pVAg2M3-Hu1D10

Figure 7B. Restriction Map of Heavy Chain Vector pVAg1.N-Hu1D10

Figure 7C. Restriction Map of Heavy Chain Vector pHuHCg3.Tt.D-Hu1D10

- 15 Figure 7D. Restriction Map of Heavy Chain Vector pHuHCg4.Tt.D-Hu1D10

Figure 8. Restriction Map of Light Chain Vector pVk-Hu1D10.

Figure 9A. Restriction Map of Human FcRn Vector pDL208

Figure 9B. Restriction Map of Rhesus FcRn Vector pDL410

- Figure 10A. SDS-PAGE Analysis of OST577-IgG2M3 Wild-Type and Mutant  
20 Antibodies

Purified OST577-IgG2M3 wild-type and mutant antibodies were analyzed by SDS-PAGE under reducing conditions, as described in Example 5.

Figure 10B. SDS-PAGE Analysis of OST577-IgG1 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies

- Purified OST577-IgG1 wild-type and mutant antibodies were analyzed by SDS-PAGE  
25 under reducing conditions, as described in Example 5.

Figure 11A. Single Point Competitive Binding Assay of the Various Mutants of Position 250 of OST577-IgG2M3 to Human FcRn. The binding of biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3 antibody to human FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in the presence of the wild-type or position 250 mutant OST577-IgG2M3 competitor antibodies in FBB, at pH 6.0, was

detected with streptavidin-conjugated RPE and analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 6.

Figure 11B. Single Point Competitive Binding Assay of the Various Mutants of Position 314 of OST577-IgG2M3 to Human FcRn. The binding of biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3 antibody to human FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in the presence of the wild-type or position 314 mutant OST577-IgG2M3 competitor antibodies in FBB, at pH 6.0, was detected with streptavidin-conjugated RPE and analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 6.

Figure 11C. Single Point Competitive Binding Assay of the Various Mutants of Position 428 of OST577-IgG2M3 to Human FcRn. The binding of biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3 antibody to human FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in the presence of the wild-type or position 428 mutant OST577-IgG2M3 competitor antibodies in FBB, at pH 6.0, was detected with streptavidin-conjugated RPE and analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 6.

Figure 12A. Competitive Binding Assay of OST577-IgG2M3 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies to Human FcRn. The binding of biotinylated HuEP5C7-IgG2M3 antibody to human FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in the presence of increasing concentrations of the wild-type or mutant OST577-IgG2M3 competitor antibodies in FBB, at pH 6.0, was detected with streptavidin-conjugated RPE and analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 6.

Figure 12B. Competitive Binding Assay of OST577-IgG2M3 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies to Human FcRn. The binding of biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3 antibody to human FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in the presence of increasing concentrations of the wild-type or mutant OST577-IgG2M3 competitor antibodies in FBB, at pH 6.0, was detected with streptavidin-conjugated RPE and analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 6.

Figure 13. Antibody Binding to Cells Transfected with Human FcRn versus Untransfected Cells. The binding of the wild-type or mutant OST577-IgG2M3 antibodies to human FcRn on transfected NS0 cells or to untransfected NS0 cells in FBB, at pH 6.0, was analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 7.

Figure 14. Competitive Binding Assay of OST577-IgG2M3 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies to Human FcRn at 37°C. The binding of biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3

antibody to human FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in the presence of increasing concentrations of the wild-type or mutant OST577-IgG2M3 competitor antibodies in FBB, at pH 6.0, was detected with streptavidin-conjugated RPE and analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 7. All incubations were done at 37°C.

- 5 Figure 15A. pH-Dependent Binding and Release of OST577-IgG2M3 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies to Human FcRn. The binding and release of the wild-type or mutant OST577-IgG2M3 antibodies to human FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in FBB, at pH 6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.5, or 8.0, was analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 7.

- Figure 15B. pH-Dependent Binding and Release of OST577-IgG1 Wild-Type and Mutant  
10 Antibodies to Human FcRn. The binding and release of the wild-type or mutant OST577-IgG1 antibodies to human FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in FBB, at pH 6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.5, or 8.0, was analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 7.

- Figure 15C. pH-Dependent Binding and Release of OST577-IgG1 Wild-Type and Mutant  
15 Antibodies to Human FcRn. The binding and release of the wild-type or mutant OST577-IgG1 antibodies to human FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in FBB, at pH 6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.5, or 8.0, was analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 7.

- Figure 15D. pH-Dependent Binding and Release of OST577-IgG2M3 Wild-Type and  
20 Mutant Antibodies to Rhesus FcRn. The binding and release of the wild-type or mutant OST577-IgG2M3 antibodies to rhesus FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in FBB, at pH 6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.5, or 8.0, was analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 7.

Figure 15E. pH-Dependent Binding and Release of OST577-IgG1 Wild-Type and Mutant  
Antibodies to Rhesus FcRn. The binding and release of the wild-type or mutant OST577-IgG1 antibodies to rhesus FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in FBB, at pH 6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.5, or 8.0, was analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 7.

- 25 Figure 16A. Competitive Binding Assay of OST577-IgG2M3 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies to HbsAg. The binding of the wild-type or mutant OST577-IgG2M3 antibodies to HBsAg was analyzed in an ELISA competition, as described in Example 8.

- Figure 16B. Competitive Binding Assay of OST577-IgG1 Wild-Type and Mutant  
Antibodies to HbsAg. The binding of the wild-type or mutant OST577-IgG1 antibodies to  
30 HBsAg was analyzed in an ELISA competition, as described in Example 8.

Figure 17A. Binding Assay of Hu1D10-IgG2M3 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies to HLA-DR  $\beta$  Chain Allele. The binding of the wild-type or mutant Hu1D10-IgG2M3 antibodies to Raji cells was analyzed in a FACS binding assay, as described in Example 8.

Figure 17B. Binding Assay of Hu1D10-IgG1 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies to HLA-DR  $\beta$  Chain Allele. The binding of the wild-type or mutant Hu1D10-IgG1 antibodies to Raji cells was analyzed in a FACS binding assay, as described in Example 8.

Figure 18A. ADCC Assay of Hu1D10-IgG1 and Hu1D10-IgG2M3 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies Using PBMC From a 158V/V Donor. The ADCC activity of the wild-type or mutant Hu1D10-IgG1 and Hu1D10-IgG2M3 antibodies on Raji cells was determined using PBMC isolated from a donor carrying homozygous 158V/V Fc $\gamma$ RIII alleles, as described in Example 8.

Figure 18B. ADCC Assay of Hu1D10-IgG1 and Hu1D10-IgG2M3 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies Using PBMC From a 158F/F Donor. The ADCC activity of the wild-type or mutant Hu1D10-IgG1 and Hu1D10-IgG2M3 antibodies on Raji cells was determined using PBMC isolated from a donor carrying homozygous 158F/F Fc $\gamma$ RIII alleles, as described in Example 8.

Figure 19. Pharmacokinetics of OST577-IgG2M3 wild-type and variant antibodies in rhesus macaque. The observed and modeled mean serum concentrations ( $\mu$ g/ml) and standard deviations of OST577-IgG2M3 wild-type and variant antibodies administered by infusion at a dose of 1 mg/kg to groups of four rhesus macaques were plotted as a function of time (days after infusion), as described in Example 9.

Figure 20. Pharmacokinetics of OST577-IgG1 wild-type and variant antibodies in rhesus macaque. The observed and modeled mean serum concentrations ( $\mu$ g/ml) and standard deviations of OST577-IgG1 wild-type and variant antibodies administered by infusion at a dose of 1 mg/kg to groups of four rhesus macaques were plotted as a function of time (days after infusion), as described in Example 10.

Figure 21A. pH-Dependent Binding and Release of Hu1D10-IgG3 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies to Human FcRn. The binding and release of the wild-type or mutant Hu1D10-IgG3 antibodies to human FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in FBB, at pH 6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.5, or 8.0, was analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 11.

Figure 21B. pH-Dependent Binding and Release of Hu1D10-IgG4 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies to Human FcRn. The binding and release of the wild-type or mutant



Hu1D10-IgG4 antibodies to human FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in FBB, at pH 6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.5, or 8.0, was analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 11.

Figure 21C. pH-Dependent Binding and Release of Hu1D10-IgG3 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies to Rhesus FcRn. The binding and release of the wild-type or mutant Hu1D10-IgG3 antibodies to rhesus FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in FBB, at pH 6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.5, or 8.0, was analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 11.

Figure 21D. pH-Dependent Binding and Release of Hu1D10-IgG4 Wild-Type and Mutant Antibodies to Rhesus FcRn. The binding and release of the wild-type or mutant Hu1D10-IgG4 antibodies to rhesus FcRn on transfected NS0 cells in FBB, at pH 6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.5, or 8.0, was analyzed by flow cytometry, as described in Example 11.

Figure 22. Amino acid sequences of Daclizumab with various FcRn binding mutations.

Figure 23. Amino acid sequences of Fontolizumab with various FcRn binding mutations.

Figure 24. Amino acid sequences of Visilizumab with various FcRn binding mutations.

Figure 25. Amino acid sequences of M200 with various FcRn binding mutations.

## DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

### I. Modified antibodies with altered FcRn binding affinity and/or serum half-lives

In order that the invention may be more completely understood, several definitions are set forth.

As used herein, the terms "immunoglobulin" and "antibody" refer to proteins consisting of one or more polypeptides substantially encoded by immunoglobulin genes. The recognized immunoglobulin genes include the kappa, lambda, alpha, gamma ( $\gamma$ 1,  $\gamma$ 2,  $\gamma$ 3,  $\gamma$ 4), delta, epsilon, and mu constant region genes, as well as the myriad immunoglobulin variable region genes. Full-length immunoglobulin "light chains" (about 25 Kd or 214 amino acids) are encoded by a kappa or lambda variable region gene at the NH<sub>2</sub>-terminus (about 110 amino acids) and a kappa or lambda constant region gene at the COOH-terminus. Full-length immunoglobulin "heavy chains" (about 50 Kd or 446 amino acids) are similarly encoded by a heavy chain variable region gene (about 116 amino acids) and one of the other aforementioned constant region genes, e.g., gamma (encoding about 330 amino acids).

One form of immunoglobulin constitutes the basic structural unit of an antibody. This form is a tetramer and consists of two identical pairs of immunoglobulin chains, each pair having one light and one heavy chain. In each pair, the light and heavy chain variable regions are together responsible for binding to an antigen, and the constant regions are responsible for the antibody effector functions. In addition to tetrameric antibodies, immunoglobulins may exist in a variety of other forms including, for example, Fv, Fab, and (Fab')<sub>2</sub>, as well as bifunctional hybrid antibodies (e.g., Lanzavecchia and Scheidegger, Eur. J. Immunol. 17:105-111 (1987)) and in single chains (e.g., Huston et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 85:5879-5883 (1988), and Bird et al., Science, 242:423-426 (1988), which are incorporated herein by reference). (See, generally, Hood et al., "Immunology", 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., Benjamin, New York (1984), and Hunkapiller and Hood, Nature, 323:15-16 (1986), which are incorporated herein by reference).

The term "genetically altered antibodies" refers to antibodies wherein the sequence of amino acid residues has been changed from that of a native or wild-type antibody. Because of the relevance of recombinant DNA techniques, the present invention is not limited to modification of amino acid sequences found in natural antibodies. As described below, previously engineered antibodies may be redesigned according to present invention in order to obtain the desired characteristics of altered FcRn binding affinity and/or serum half-life. The possible variants of modified antibodies useful with the present invention are many and range from changing just one or a few amino acids to the complete redesign of, for example, the variable or constant region. Changes in the constant region will, in general, be made in order to improve or alter characteristics, such as complement fixation, interaction with various Fc-gamma receptors and other effector functions. Changes in the variable region will be made in order to improve the antigen binding characteristics.

An antibody having a constant region substantially identical to a naturally occurring class IgG antibody constant region refers to an antibody in which any constant region present is substantially identical, i.e., at least about 85-90%, and preferably at least 95% identical, to the amino acid sequence of the naturally occurring class IgG antibody's constant region.

In many preferred uses of the present invention, including *in vivo* use of the modified antibodies in humans for and *in vitro* detection assays, it may be preferable to use chimeric, primatized, humanized, or human antibodies that have been modified (i.e., mutated) according to the present invention.

The term "chimeric antibody" refers to an antibody in which the constant region comes from an antibody of one species (typically human) and the variable region comes from an antibody of another species (typically rodent). Methods for producing chimeric antibodies are known in the art. See e.g., Morrison, Science 229:1202-1207 (1985); Oi et al., BioTechniques 4:214-221 (1986); Gillies et al., J. Immunol. Methods 125:191-202 (1989); U.S. Patent Nos. 5,807,715; 4,816,567; and 4,816,397, which are incorporated herein by reference in their entireties.

The term "primatized antibody" refers to an antibody comprising monkey variable regions and human constant regions. Methods for producing primatized antibodies are known in the art. See e.g., U.S. Patent Nos. 5,658,570; 5,681,722; and 5,693,780, which are incorporated herein by reference in their entireties.

The term "humanized antibody" or "humanized immunoglobulin" refers to an immunoglobulin comprising a human framework, at least one and preferably all complementarity determining regions (CDRs) from a non-human antibody, and in which any constant region present is substantially identical to a human immunoglobulin constant region, i.e., at least about 85-90%, and preferably at least 95% identical. Hence, all parts of a humanized immunoglobulin, except possibly the CDRs, are substantially identical to corresponding parts of one or more native human immunoglobulin sequences. Often, framework residues in the human framework regions will be substituted with the corresponding residue from the CDR donor antibody to alter, preferably improve, antigen binding. These framework substitutions are identified by methods well known in the art, e.g., by modeling of the interactions of the CDR and framework residues to identify framework residues important for antigen binding and sequence comparison to identify unusual framework residues at particular positions. See, e.g., Queen et al., U.S. Patent Nos: 5,530,101; 5,585,089; 5,693,761; 5,693,762; 6,180,370 (each of which is incorporated by reference in its entirety). Antibodies can be humanized using a variety of techniques known in the art including, for example, CDR-grafting (EP 239,400; PCT publication WO 91/09967; U.S. Patent Nos. 5,225,539; 5,530,101 and 5,585,089), veneering or resurfacing (EP 592,106; EP 519,596; Padlan, Mol. Immunol., 28:489-498 (1991); Studnicka et al., Prot. Eng. 7:805-814 (1994); Roguska et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 91:969-973 (1994), and chain shuffling (U.S. Patent No. 5,565,332), all of which are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties.

Completely human antibodies may be desirable for therapeutic treatment of human patients. Human antibodies can be made by a variety of methods known in the art including

phage display methods described above using antibody libraries derived from human immunoglobulin sequences. See U.S. Patent Nos. 4,444,887 and 4,716,111; and PCT publications WO 98/46645; WO 98/50433; WO 98/24893; WO 98/16654; WO 96/34096; WO 96/33735; and WO 91/10741, each of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Human antibodies can also be produced using transgenic mice which are incapable of expressing functional endogenous immunoglobulins, but which can express human immunoglobulin genes. For an overview of this technology for producing human antibodies, see Lonberg and Huszar, *Int. Rev. Immunol.* 13:65-93 (1995). For a detailed discussion of this technology for producing human antibodies and human monoclonal antibodies and protocols for producing such antibodies, see, e.g., PCT publications WO 98/24893; WO 92/01047; WO 96/34096; WO 96/33735; European Patent No. 0 598 877; U.S. Patent Nos. 5,413,923; 5,625,126; 5,633,425; 5,569,825; 5,661,016; 5,545,806; 5,814,318; 5,885,793; 5,916,771; and 5,939,598, which are incorporated by reference herein in their entireties. In addition, companies such as Abgenix, Inc. (Fremont, CA) and Medarex (Princeton, NJ) can be engaged to provide human antibodies directed against a selected antigen using technology similar to that described above.

Completely human antibodies that recognize a selected epitope can be generated using a technique referred to as "guided selection." In this approach a selected non-human monoclonal antibody, e.g., a mouse antibody, is used to guide the selection of a completely human antibody recognizing the same epitope (Jespers et al., *Biotechnology* 12:899-903 (1988)).

As used herein the term "altering" may refer to "increasing" or "reducing".

The present invention provides for a modified antibody of class IgG, in which at least one amino acid from the heavy chain constant region, selected from the group consisting of amino acid residues 250, 314, and 428, is substituted with an amino acid residue different from that present in the unmodified antibody.

The antibodies of IgG class include antibodies of IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4. The constant region of the heavy chain of an IgG molecule is indicated in Figure 1. The numbering of the residues in the heavy chain is that of the EU index (Kabat et al., *op. cit.*). The substitution can be made at position 250, 314, or 428 alone, or in any combinations thereof, such as at positions 250 and 428, or at positions 250 and 314, or at positions 314 and 428, or at positions 250, 314, and 428, with positions 250 and 428 as a preferred combination.

For each position, the substituting amino acid may be any amino acid residue different from that present in that position of the unmodified antibody.

For position 250, the substituting amino acid residue can be any amino acid residue other than threonine, including, but not limited to, alanine, cysteine, aspartic acid, glutamic acid, phenylalanine, glycine, histidine, isoleucine, lysine, leucine, methionine, asparagine, proline, glutamine, arginine, serine, valine, tryptophan, or tyrosine.

For position 314, the substituting amino acid residue can be any amino acid residue other than leucine, including, but not limited to, alanine, cysteine, aspartic acid, glutamic acid, phenylalanine, glycine, histidine, isoleucine, lysine, methionine, asparagine, proline, glutamine, arginine, serine, threonine, valine, tryptophan, or tyrosine.

For position 428, the substituting amino acid residues can be any amino acid residue other than methionine, including, but not limited to, alanine, cysteine, aspartic acid, glutamic acid, phenylalanine, glycine, histidine, isoleucine, lysine, leucine, asparagine, proline, glutamine, arginine, serine, threonine, valine, tryptophan, or tyrosine.

The present invention provides for antibodies of class IgG comprising at least one of the above-described amino acid substitutions. For example, the present invention provides for the mutated IgG2M3 constant regions comprising two of the above-mentioned substitutions at position 250, 314, and/or 428. The amino acid sequences of some specific substitutions (i.e., mutations) of the constant region provided by the present invention are disclosed in Table 1 (SEQ ID NOs: 10-66) and Figure 3B.

**Table 1**

<i>Substituting Amino Acid</i>	<b>250</b>	<b>314</b>	<b>428</b>
Alanine (A)	T250A; SEQ ID NO: 10	L314A; SEQ ID NO: 29	M428A; SEQ ID NO: 48
Cysteine (C)	T250C; SEQ ID NO: 11	L314C; SEQ ID NO: 30	M428C; SEQ ID NO: 49
Aspartic acid (D)	T250D; SEQ ID NO: 12	L314D; SEQ ID NO: 31	M428D; SEQ ID NO: 50
Glutamic acid (E)	T250E; SEQ ID NO: 13	L314E; SEQ ID NO: 32	M428E; SEQ ID NO: 51
Phenylalanine (F)	T250F; SEQ ID NO: 14	L314F; SEQ ID NO: 33	M428F; SEQ ID NO: 52
Glycine (G)	T250G; SEQ ID NO: 15	L314G; SEQ ID NO: 34	M428G; SEQ ID NO: 53
Histidine (H)	T250H; SEQ ID NO: 16	L314H; SEQ ID NO: 35	M428H; SEQ ID NO: 54
Isoleucine (I)	T250I; SEQ ID NO: 17	L314I; SEQ ID NO: 36	M428I; SEQ ID NO: 55
Lysine (K)	T250K; SEQ ID NO: 18	L314K; SEQ ID NO: 37	M428K; SEQ ID NO: 56

Leucine (L)	T250L; SEQ ID NO: 19	Wild Type	M428L; SEQ ID NO: 57
Methionine (M)	T250M; SEQ ID NO: 20	L314M; SEQ ID NO: 38	Wild Type
Asparagine (N)	T250N; SEQ ID NO: 21	L314N; SEQ ID NO: 39	M428N; SEQ ID NO: 58
Proline (P)	T250P; SEQ ID NO: 22	L314P; SEQ ID NO: 40	M428P; SEQ ID NO: 59
Glutamine (Q)	T250Q; SEQ ID NO: 23	L314Q; SEQ ID NO: 41	M428Q; SEQ ID NO: 60
Arginine (R)	T250R; SEQ ID NO: 24	L314R; SEQ ID NO: 42	M428R; SEQ ID NO: 61
Serine (S)	T250S; SEQ ID NO: 25	L314S; SEQ ID NO: 43	M428S; SEQ ID NO: 62
Threonine (T)	Wild Type	L314T; SEQ ID NO: 44	M428T; SEQ ID NO: 63
Valine (V)	T250V; SEQ ID NO: 26	L314V; SEQ ID NO: 45	M428V; SEQ ID NO: 64
Tryptophan (W)	T250W; SEQ ID NO: 27	L314W; SEQ ID NO: 46	M428W; SEQ ID NO: 65
Tyrosine (Y)	T250Y; SEQ ID NO: 28	L314Y; SEQ ID NO: 47	M428Y; SEQ ID NO: 66

In a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides for a modified antibody having an altered serum half-life or FcRn binding affinity relative to the unmodified antibody. The present invention further provides for a modified antibody of class IgG, in which at least one amino acid from the heavy chain constant region, selected from the group consisting of amino acid residues 250, 314, and 428, is substituted with another amino acid which is different from that present in the unmodified antibody, thereby altering the binding affinity for FcRn and/or the serum half-life of the modified antibody compared to the binding affinity and/or serum half-life of said unmodified antibody.

The unmodified antibodies of the present invention include natural antibodies of all species. The term "natural antibodies" refers to all antibodies produced by a host animal. Non-limiting exemplary natural antibodies of the present invention include antibodies derived from human, chicken, goats, and rodents (e.g., rats, mice, hamsters and rabbits), including transgenic rodents genetically engineered to produce human antibodies (see, e.g., Lonberg et al., WO93/12227; U.S. Patent No. 5,545,806; and Kucherlapati, et al., WO91/10741; U.S. Patent No. 6,150,584, which are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety).

The unmodified antibodies of the present invention also includes recombinant antibodies having the same amino acid sequences as a natural antibody, or genetically-altered antibodies that have changed amino acid sequences compared to the natural antibodies. They can be made in any expression systems including both prokaryotic and

eukaryotic expression systems or using phage display methods (see, e.g., Dower et al., WO91/17271 and McCafferty et al., WO92/01047; U.S. Patent No. 5,969,108, which are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety).

The unmodified antibodies of the present invention also include chimeric, 5 primatized, humanized and human antibodies (see discussion above). Consequently, a modified antibody of the present invention may be produced by substituting an amino acid residue at position 250, 314, or 428 in a humanized, primatized, or chimeric antibody, wherein the humanized, primatized, or chimeric antibody previously has been derived from a native antibody.

10 Preferably, the chimeric antibodies comprise variable regions derived from rodents and constant regions derived from humans so that the chimeric antibodies have longer half-lives and are less immunogenic when administered to a human subject. The primatized antibodies comprise variable regions derived from primates and constant regions derived from humans. The humanized antibodies typically comprise at least one CDR from the 15 donor antibodies (for example, murine or chicken antibodies) and heavy and/or light chain human frameworks. Sometimes, some amino acid residues in the human frameworks will be replaced by the residues at the equivalent positions of the donor antibodies to ensure the proper binding of the humanized antibodies to their antigens. The detailed guidelines of antibody humanization are disclosed in U.S. Patent Nos: 5,530,101; 5,585,089; 5,693,761; 20 5,693,762; and 6,180,370, each of which is incorporated by reference herein.

The unmodified antibodies of the present invention may include genetically-altered antibodies that are functionally equivalent to the corresponding natural antibodies. Unmodified antibodies that are genetically-altered to provide improved stability and/or therapeutic efficacy are preferred. Examples of altered antibodies include those with 25 conservative substitutions of amino acid residues, and one or more deletions or additions of amino acids that do not significantly alter the antigen binding utility. Substitutions can range from changing or modifying one or more amino acid residues to complete redesign of a region as long as the binding or functional utility is maintained. Antibodies of this invention can be altered post-translationally (e.g., acetylation, and phosphorylation) or can 30 be altered synthetically (e.g., the attachment of a labeling group).

The unmodified antibodies of the present invention may include antibodies having enhanced binding affinities for their antigens through genetic alterations of the variable regions (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 6,350,861, which is herein incorporated by reference in its entirety). In one alternative embodiment, the modified IgGs of the present invention that

have longer half-lives than wild-type (or unmodified) IgGs may also include IgGs whose bioactive sites, such as antigen-binding sites, Fc-receptor binding sites, or complement-binding sites, are modified by genetic engineering to increase or reduce such activities compared to the wild type.

5 The unmodified and modified antibodies of the present invention may be of any of the recognized isotypes, but the four IgG isotypes are preferred, with IgG1 and IgG2 especially preferred. Antibodies with constant regions mutated to have reduced effector functions, for example the IgG2M3 and other IgG2 mutants described in U.S. Patent No. 5,834,597 (which is incorporated by reference in its entirety), are included. In a preferred  
10 aspect, the unmodified and modified antibodies in the present invention comprise heavy chain constant regions of human IgGs.

The present invention may be applied to any antibody comprising heavy chain constant regions of IgG class, preferably IgG1, IgG2, IgG2M3, IgG3, and IgG4. The heavy chain variable regions of such antibodies can be derived from any selected antibodies.  
15 Exemplary antibodies disclosed herein include OST577-IgG1 and OST577-IgG2M3, which comprise the heavy chain and light chain variable regions of the human anti-hepatitis B virus antibody OST577 (Ehrlich et al., Hum. Antibodies Hybridomas 3:2-7 (1992)), the light chain constant region of human lambda-2, and the heavy chain constant region of human IgG1 and IgG2M3, respectively. Also disclosed herein are Hu1D10-IgG1 and  
20 Hu1D10-IgG2M3, which comprise the heavy and light chain variable regions of the humanized anti-HLA-DR  $\beta$  chain allele antibody Hu1D10 (Kostelny et al., Int. J. Cancer 93:556-565 (2001)), the light chain constant region of human kappa, and the aforementioned heavy chain constant regions of human IgG1 and IgG2M3, respectively.

Further exemplifications of the present invention disclosed herein include mutants of  
25 the human IgG1, IgG2M3 (a genetically altered variant of IgG2), IgG3 and IgG4 antibodies, illustrating alteration of the serum half-life of an antibody of class IgG. The constant region of the heavy chain of IgG2M3 is derived from that of the IgG2 by replacing residues 234 and 237 of the IgG2 heavy chain constant region with alanine. The generation of the heavy chain constant region of IgG2M3 is disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 5,834,597, which is  
30 incorporated herein by reference.

Generally, the modified antibodies of the present invention include any immunoglobulin molecule that binds (preferably, immunospecifically, i.e., competes off non-specific binding, as determined by immunoassays well known in the art for assaying specific antigen-antibody binding) an antigen and contains an FcRn-binding fragment.



Such antibodies include, but are not limited to, polyclonal, monoclonal, bi-specific, multi-specific, human, humanized, chimeric antibodies, single chain antibodies, Fab fragments, F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragments, disulfide-linked Fvs, and fragments containing either a V<sub>L</sub> or V<sub>H</sub> domain or even a complementary determining region (CDR) that specifically binds an antigen, in certain cases, engineered to contain or fused to an FcRn binding domain.

The modified IgG molecules of the invention may include IgG subclasses of any given animals. For example, in humans, the IgG class includes IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4; and the mouse IgG class includes IgG1, IgG2a, IgG2b, and IgG3; and the rat IgG class includes IgG1, IgG2a, IgG2b, IgG2c, and IgG3. It is known that certain IgG subclasses, for example, rat IgG2b and IgG2c, have higher clearance rates than, for example, IgG1 (Medesan et al., Eur. J. Immunol., 28:2092-2100 (1998)). Thus, when using IgG subclasses other than IgG1 it may be advantageous to substitute one or more of the residues, particularly in the C<sub>H</sub>2 and C<sub>H</sub>3 domains, which differ from the IgG1 sequence with those of IgG1, thereby increasing the *in vivo* half-life of the other types of IgG.

The immunoglobulins of the present invention may be from any animal origin including birds and mammals. Preferably, the antibodies are human, rodent, donkey, sheep, rabbit, goat, guinea pig, camel, horse, or chicken. As used herein, "human" antibodies include antibodies having the amino acid sequence of a human immunoglobulin and include antibodies isolated from human immunoglobulin libraries or from animals transgenic for one or more human immunoglobulin, as described *infra* and, for example, in U.S. Patent No. 5,939,598 by Kucherlapati et al.

In addition, the modified antibodies of the present invention may be monospecific, bispecific, trispecific antibodies or of greater multispecificity. Multispecific antibodies may be specific for different epitopes of a polypeptide or may be specific for heterologous epitopes, such as a heterologous polypeptide or solid support material. See, e.g., PCT publications WO 93/17715; WO 92/08802; WO 91/00360; WO 92/05793; Tutt et al., J. Immunol. 147:60-69 (1991); U.S. Patent Nos. 4,474,893; 4,714,681; 4,925,648; 5,573,920; 5,601,819; Kostelny et al., J. Immunol. 148:1547-1553 (1992).

The modified antibodies of the invention include derivatives that are otherwise modified, i.e., by the covalent attachment of any type of molecule to the antibody such that covalent attachment does not prevent the antibody from binding antigen and/or generating an anti-idiotypic response. For example, but not by way of limitation, the antibody derivatives include antibodies that have been modified, e.g., by glycosylation, acetylation, pegylation, phosphorylation, amidation, derivatization by known protecting/blocking

groups, proteolytic cleavage, linkage to a cellular ligand or other protein, etc. Any of numerous chemical modifications may be carried out by known techniques, including, but not limited to, specific chemical cleavage, acetylation, formylation, metabolic synthesis of tunicamycin, etc. Additionally, the derivative may contain one or more non-classical amino acids.

Monoclonal antibodies useful with the present invention can be prepared using a wide variety of techniques known in the art including the use of hybridoma, recombinant, and phage display technologies, or a combination thereof. For example, monoclonal antibodies can be produced using hybridoma techniques including those known in the art and taught, for example, in Harlow and Lane, "Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual," Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, New York (1988); Hammerling et al., in: "Monoclonal Antibodies and T-Cell Hybridomas," Elsevier, New York (1981), pp. 563-681 (both of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entireties).

The term "monoclonal antibody" as used herein is not limited to antibodies produced through hybridoma technology. The term "monoclonal antibody" refers to an antibody that is derived from a single clone, including any eukaryotic, prokaryotic, or phage clone, and not the method by which it is produced.

Methods for producing and screening for specific antibodies using hybridoma technology are routine and well known in the art. In a non-limiting example, mice can be immunized with an antigen of interest or a cell expressing such an antigen. Once an immune response is detected, e.g., antibodies specific for the antigen are detected in the mouse serum, the mouse spleen is harvested and splenocytes isolated. The splenocytes are then fused by well-known techniques to any suitable myeloma cells. Hybridomas are selected and cloned by limiting dilution. The hybridoma clones are then assayed by methods known in the art for cells that secrete antibodies capable of binding the antigen. Ascites fluid, which generally contains high levels of antibodies, can be generated by inoculating mice intraperitoneally with positive hybridoma clones.

Antibody fragments that recognize specific epitopes may also be useful with the present invention and may be generated by well-known techniques. For example, Fab and  $F(ab')_2$  fragments may be produced by proteolytic cleavage of immunoglobulin molecules, using enzymes such as papain (to produce Fab fragments) or pepsin (to produce  $F(ab')_2$  fragments).  $F(ab')_2$  fragments contain the complete light chain, and the variable region, the CH1 region and the hinge region of the heavy chain.

For example, antibodies can also be generated using various display methods known in the art, including phage display. In phage display methods, functional antibody domains are displayed on the surface of phage particles that carry the polynucleotide sequences encoding them. In a particular embodiment, such phage can be utilized to display antigen-binding domains, such as Fab and Fv or disulfide-bond stabilized Fv, expressed from a repertoire or combinatorial antibody library (e.g., human or murine). Phage expressing an antigen binding domain that binds the antigen of interest can be selected or identified with antigen, e.g., using labeled antigen or antigen bound or captured to a solid surface or bead. Phage used in these methods are typically filamentous phage, including fd and M13. The antigen binding domains are expressed as a recombinantly fused protein to either the phage gene III or gene VIII protein. Alternatively, the modified FcRn binding portion of immunoglobulins of the present invention can be also expressed in a phage display system. Examples of phage display methods that can be used to make the immunoglobulins, or fragments thereof, of the present invention include those disclosed in Brinkman et al., J. Immunol. Methods 182:41-50 (1995); Ames et al., J. Immunol. Methods 184:177-186 (1995); Kettleborough et al., Eur. J. Immunol. 24:952-958 (1994); Persic et al., Gene 187:9-18 (1997); Burton et al., Advances in Immunology 57:191-280 (1994); PCT application No. PCT/GB91/01134; PCT publications WO 90/02809; WO 91/10737; WO 92/01047; WO 92/18619; WO 93/11236; WO 95/15982; WO 95/20401; and U.S. Patent Nos. 5,698,426; 5,223,409; 5,403,484; 5,580,717; 5,427,908; 5,750,753; 5,821,047; 5,571,698; 5,427,908; 5,516,637; 5,780,225; 5,658,727; 5,733,743 and 5,969,108; each of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

As described in the above references, after phage selection, the antibody coding regions from the phage can be isolated and used to generate whole antibodies, including human antibodies, or any other desired fragments, and expressed in any desired host, including mammalian cells, insect cells, plant cells, yeast, and bacteria, e.g., as described in detail below. For example, techniques to recombinantly produce Fab, Fab', and F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragments can also be employed using methods known in the art such as those disclosed in PCT publication WO 92/22324; Mullinax et al., BioTechniques 12:864-869 (1992); Sawai et al., Amer. J. Reprod. Immunol. 34:26-34 (1995); and Better et al., Science 240:1041-1043 (1988), each of which is incorporated by reference in its entirety. Examples of techniques which can be used to produce single-chain Fvs and antibodies include those described in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,946,778 and 5,258,498; Huston et al., Methods in

Enzymology 203:46-88 (1991); Shu et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 90:7995-7999 (1993); and Skerra et al., Science 240:1038-1040 (1988).

- In particular embodiments, the modified antibodies have *in vivo* therapeutic and/or prophylactic uses. Examples of therapeutic and prophylactic antibodies which may be so
- 5 modified include, but are not limited to, SYNAGIS® (Medimmune, MD) which is a humanized anti-respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) monoclonal antibody for the treatment of patients with RSV infection; HERCEPTIN® (Trastuzumab) (Genentech, CA) which is a humanized anti-HER2 monoclonal antibody for the treatment of patients with metastatic breast cancer; REMICADE® (infliximab) (Centocor, PA) which is a chimeric anti-TNF- $\alpha$
  - 10 monoclonal antibody for the treatment of patients with Crohn's disease; REOPRO® (abciximab) (Centocor) which is an anti-glycoprotein IIb/IIIa receptor on the platelets for the prevention of clot formation; ZENAPAX® (daclizumab) (Roche Pharmaceuticals, Switzerland) which is an immunosuppressive, humanized anti-CD25 monoclonal antibody for the prevention of acute renal allograft rejection. Other examples are a humanized anti-
  - 15 CD18 F(ab')<sub>2</sub> (Genentech); CDP860 which is a humanized anti-CD18 F(ab')<sub>2</sub> (Celltech, UK); PR0542 which is an anti-HIV gp120 antibody fused with CD4 (Progenics/Genzyme Transgenics); OSTAVIR™ which is a human anti Hepatitis B virus antibody (Protein Design Labs/Novartis); PROTOVIR™ which is a humanized anti-CMV IgG1 antibody (Protein Design Labs/Novartis); IC14 which is an anti-CD14 antibody (ICOS);
  - 20 AVASTIN™ which is a humanized anti- VEGF IgG1 antibody (Genentech); ERBITUX™ which is a chimeric anti-EGFR IgG antibody (ImClone Systems); VITAXIN™ which is a humanized anti- $\alpha$ V $\beta$ 3 integrin antibody (Applied Molecular Evolution/Medimmune); Campath-1H/LDP-03 which is a humanized anti CD52 IgG1 antibody (Leukosite); ZAMYL™ which is a humanized anti-CD33 IgG antibody (Protein Design Labs/Kanebo);
  - 25 RITUXAN™ which is a chimeric anti-CD20 IgG1 antibody (IDEC Pharmaceuticals/Genentech, Roche/Zenyaku); LYMPHOCIDE™ which is a humanized anti-CD22 IgG antibody (Immunomedics); REMITOGENT™ which is a humanized anti-HLA-DR antibody (Protein Design Labs); ABX-IL8 which is a human anti- IL8 antibody (Abgenix); RAPTIVA™ which is a humanized IgG1 antibody (Genetech/Xoma); ICM3
  - 30 which is a humanized anti-ICAM3 antibody (ICOS); IDEC-114 which is a primatized anti-CD80 antibody (IDEC Pharmaceuticals/Mitsubishi); IDEC-131 which is a humanized anti-CD40L antibody (IDEC/Eisai); IDEC-151 which is a primatized anti-CD4 antibody (IDEC); IDEC-152 which is a primatized anti-CD23 antibody (IDEC/Seikagaku);

- NUVION™ which is a humanized anti-CD3 IgG (Protein Design Labs); 5G1.1 which is a humanized anti-complement factor 5 (C5) antibody (Alexion Pharmaceuticals); HUMIRA™ which is a human anti-TNF- $\alpha$  antibody (CAT/BASF); CDP870 which is a humanized anti-TNF- $\alpha$  Fab fragment (Celltech); IDEC-151 which is a primatized anti-CD4 IgG1 antibody (IDEC Pharmaceuticals/Smith-Kline Beecham); MDX-CD4 which is a human anti-CD4 IgG antibody (Medarex/Eisai/Genmab); CDP571 which is a humanized anti-TNF- $\alpha$  IgG4 antibody (Celltech); LDP-02 which is a humanized anti- $\alpha$ 4 $\beta$ 7 antibody (LeukoSite/Genentech); OrthoClone OKT4A which is a humanized anti-CD4 IgG antibody (Ortho Biotech); ANTOVA™ which is a humanized anti-CD40L IgG antibody (Biogen); ANTEGREN™ which is a humanized anti-VLA-4 IgG antibody (Elan); MDX-33 which is a human anti-CD64 (Fc $\gamma$ R) antibody (Medarex/Centcon); SCH55700 which is a humanized anti-IL-5 IgG4 antibody (Celltech/Schering); SB-240563 and SB-240683 which are humanized anti-IL-5 and IL-4 antibodies, respectively (SmithKline Beecham); rhuMab-E25 which is a humanized anti-IgE IgG1 antibody (Genentech/Novartis/Tanox Biosystems); IDEC-152 which is a primatized anti-CD23 antibody (IDEC Pharmaceuticals); SIMULECT™ which is a chimeric anti-CD25 IgG1 antibody (Novartis Pharmaceuticals); LDP-01 which is a humanized anti- $\beta$ 2-integrin IgG antibody (Leukosite); CAT-152 which is a human anti-TGF- $\beta$ 2 antibody (Cambridge Antibody Technology); and Corsevin M which is a chimeric anti-Factor VII antibody (Centocor).

- The present invention permits modification of these and other therapeutic antibodies to increase the *in vivo* half-life, allowing administration of lower effective dosages and/or less frequent dosing of the therapeutic antibody. Such modification to increase *in vivo* half-life can also be useful to improve diagnostic immunoglobulins as well. For example, increased serum half-life of a diagnostic antibody may permit administration of lower doses to achieve sufficient diagnostic sensitivity. Alternatively, decreased serum half-life may be advantageous in applications where rapid clearance of a diagnostic antibody is desired.

- Disclosed herein is the amino acid sequence of OST577-IgG2M3, including the amino acid sequence of its heavy chain variable region (SEQ ID NO: 1) (OST577-VH) and constant region (SEQ ID NO: 2) (IgG2M3-CH) with positions 250, 314, and 428 highlighted, and the amino acid sequence of its light chain variable region (SEQ ID NO: 4) (OST577-VL) and constant region (SEQ ID NO: 5) (LAMBDA2-CL) (Figure 3A).

Disclosed herein is the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of OST577-IgG1 (SEQ ID NO: 3), with positions 250, 314, and 428 highlighted (Figure 3C).

The present invention provides for a modified antibody having an increased binding affinity for FcRn and/or an increased serum half-life as compared with the unmodified antibody, wherein amino acid residue 250 or 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with another amino acid residue that is different from that present in the unmodified antibody. Preferably, amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with glutamic acid or glutamine. Alternatively, amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with phenylalanine or leucine.

In one example, said unmodified antibody comprises the heavy chain constant region of an IgG1, or IgG2, or IgG2M3 molecule, including, but not limited to, OST577-IgG2M3 or OST577-IgG1. IgG1, IgG2, and IgG2M3 have a threonine residue at position 250 and a methionine residue at position 428. Preferably, the threonine residue at position 250 is substituted with glutamic acid (T250E) or glutamine (T250Q), and the methionine residue at position 428 is substituted with phenylalanine (M428F) or leucine (M428L). Figure 3B discloses the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of the modified IgG2M3 having the amino acid substitution of T250E (SEQ ID NO: 13), T250Q (SEQ ID NO: 23), M428F (SEQ ID NO: 52), or M428L (SEQ ID NO: 57). Figure 3C discloses the amino acid sequence of the constant region of the heavy chain of the modified IgG1 having the amino acid substitution of T250D (SEQ ID NO: 67), T250E (SEQ ID NO: 68), T250Q (SEQ ID NO: 69), M428F (SEQ ID NO: 70), or M428L (SEQ ID NO: 71).

The present invention provides for a modified antibody having an increased binding affinity for FcRn and/or an increased serum half-life as compared with the unmodified antibody. The amino acid modification can be any one of the following substitutions:

- 1) Amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with glutamic acid and amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with phenylalanine.
- 2) Amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with glutamine and amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with phenylalanine.
- 3) Amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with glutamine and amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with leucine.

The amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of the modified IgG2M3 having the double amino acid substitutions of T250E/M428F (SEQ ID NO: 72),

T250Q/M428F (SEQ ID NO: 73), or T250Q/M428L (SEQ ID NO: 74) is disclosed in Figure 3B.

The amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of the modified IgG1 having the double amino acid substitutions of T250E/M428F (SEQ ID NO: 75) or

5 T250Q/M428L (SEQ ID NO: 76) is disclosed in Figure 3C.

The modified antibodies with the described double amino acid substitutions at positions 250 and 428 display exceedingly high binding affinities for FcRn compared to that of the unmodified antibodies.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the binding affinity for FcRn and/or the serum half-life of the modified antibody is increased by at least about 30%, 50%, 80%, 2-fold, 3-fold, 4-fold, 5-fold, 10-fold, 15-fold, 20-fold, 25-fold, 30-fold, 40-fold, 50-fold, 60-fold, 70-fold, 80-fold, 90-fold, or 100-fold.

The present invention provides for a modified antibody having a reduced binding affinity for FcRn and/or a reduced serum half-life as compared with the unmodified antibody, wherein amino acid residue 314 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with another amino acid which is different from that present in an unmodified antibody. The modified antibodies having an amino acid substitution at position 314 have been shown to display a reduced binding affinity, suggesting that position 314 should be modified if a reduced serum half-life of an antibody is desired. Preferably, the amino acid residue 314 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with alanine, arginine, aspartic acid, asparagine, cysteine, glutamic acid, glutamine, glycine, histidine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, proline, serine, threonine, tryptophan, tyrosine, or valine. More preferably, the amino acid substitution is from leucine to alanine or arginine at position 314. As shown in the Examples, the binding affinity for FcRn of the modified OST577-IgG2M3 comprising a substitution from leucine to arginine is reduced to 11% of that of the unmodified OST577-IgG2M3.

As shown in Figure 3B, L314A depicts the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of the modified IgG2M3, having the amino acid substitution from leucine to alanine at position 314 (SEQ ID NO: 29). L314R depicts the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of the modified IgG2M3, having the amino acid substitution from leucine to arginine at position 314 (SEQ ID NO: 42).

The present invention provides for a modified antibody having a reduced binding affinity for FcRn and/or a reduced serum half-life as compared with the unmodified antibody, wherein (1) amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is

substituted with arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, lysine, phenylalanine, proline, tryptophan, or tyrosine; or (2) amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with alanine, arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, cysteine, glutamic acid, glutamine, glycine, histidine, lysine, proline, serine, threonine, tyrosine, or valine.

- 5 Preferably, amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with aspartic acid, or amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with glycine. Such an amino acid substitution can dramatically reduce the serum half-life of an antibody. As shown in the Examples, the binding affinity for FcRn of the modified OST577-IgG2M3 having such amino acid substitutions is reduced to about 5-7% of that of  
10 the unmodified OST577-IgG2M3.

- As shown in Figure 3B, T250D depicts the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of the modified IgG2M3 having the amino acid substitution from threonine to aspartic acid at position 250 (SEQ ID NO: 12). M428G depicts the amino acid sequence of the heavy chain constant region of the modified IgG2M3 having the amino acid  
15 substitution from methionine to glycine at position 428 (SEQ ID NO: 53).

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the binding affinity for FcRn and/or the serum half-life of said modified antibody is reduced by at least about 20%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 97%, 98%, or 99%.

- The present invention includes the heavy chain constant regions, Fc regions, or C<sub>H</sub>2-  
20 C<sub>H</sub>3 regions of the modified IgG antibodies described herein, preferably, of the modified IgG1, IgG2 or IgG2M3 antibodies having the amino acid substitutions described herein.

The present invention also includes a polypeptide comprising an amino acid sequence of any one of the SEQ ID Nos: 10-76. In a preferred embodiment, these polypeptides are mutated IgG1, IgG2, or IgG2M3 constant regions.

- 25 The heavy chain constant regions of the modified antibodies of the present invention can be linked to the heavy chain variable region of any selected antibody to generate the desired hybrid heavy chain. Examples of the selected antibodies include, but are not limited to, antibodies against IL-2, IL-4, IL-10, IL-12, HSV, CD3, CD33, CMV, and IFN- $\gamma$ . In addition, the variable regions can be those of natural antibodies of any species such as a  
30 human, a primate, or a rodent. Alternatively, they can be that of genetically-altered antibodies, including, but not limited to, humanized antibodies, antibodies having increased binding affinities to their antigen through genetic modification, or fully human antibodies. Such a hybrid heavy chain can be linked to a variety of light chains to produce the desired antibody. The light chains can be either lambda or kappa light chains. Since the serum



half-life of an antibody is determined primarily by its heavy chain constant region, a desired serum half-life of a produced antibody can be accomplished through the amino acid substitutions in the heavy chain constant region described herein.

## II. Production of modified antibodies with altered FcRn binding affinity and/or serum half-lives

The present invention provides for methods of producing proteins, particularly antibodies with altered FcRn binding affinity and/or serum half-lives. Preferably, the present invention provides for methods to modify a given antibody of class IgG at one or more of the positions disclosed herein. This may be achieved chemically, or by random or site-directed mutagenesis and recombinant production using any known production methods.

The present invention provides for a method of modifying an antibody of class IgG, comprising substituting at least one amino acid from the heavy chain constant region selected from the group consisting of amino acid residues 250, 314, and 428 with an amino acid which is different from that present in an unmodified antibody, thereby causing alteration of the binding affinity for FcRn and/or the serum half-life of said unmodified antibody.

The substitution can be made at position 250, 314, or 428 alone, or in any combinations thereof, such as at positions 250 and 428.

To increase the binding affinity for FcRn and/or increase the serum half-life of an antibody, amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with glutamic acid or glutamine, or amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with phenylalanine or leucine. Alternatively, amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with glutamic acid and amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with phenylalanine; or amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with glutamine and amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with phenylalanine; or amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with glutamine and amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with leucine. Modification at both 250 and 428 is preferred since antibodies having such double mutations display exceptionally high binding affinities for FcRn.

To produce a modified antibody having a reduced binding affinity for FcRn and/or reduced serum half-life, as compared with the unmodified antibody, amino acid residue 314

from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with another amino acid, which is different from that present in an unmodified antibody. Preferably, amino acid residue 314 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with alanine, arginine, aspartic acid, asparagine, cysteine, glutamic acid, glutamine, glycine, histidine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, proline, serine, threonine, tryptophan, tyrosine, or valine. More preferably, amino acid residue 314 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with alanine or arginine.

To produce a modified antibody having a reduced binding affinity for FcRn and a reduced serum half-life as compared with the unmodified antibody, amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, lysine, phenylalanine, proline, tryptophan, or tyrosine; or amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is substituted with alanine, arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, cysteine, glutamic acid, glutamine, glycine, histidine, lysine, proline, serine, threonine, tyrosine, or valine. More preferably, amino acid residue 250 is substituted with aspartic acid or amino acid 428 is substituted with glycine.

The amino acid substitutions described herein are achieved by standard recombinant DNA technology. In one embodiment, site-directed mutagenesis may be used to introduce the amino acid substitutions into the DNA encoding an unmodified antibody. The resulting DNAs of modified antibodies are then delivered into host cells and the modified antibodies are so produced. The desired alteration of binding affinity for FcRn of the modified antibodies can be selected by using phage display technology or any other suitable methods known in the art and confirmed by measuring the binding affinity.

Preferably, a method of producing modified antibody of class IgG with an altered binding affinity for FcRn and an altered serum half-life as compared with unmodified antibody comprises:

- (a) preparing a replicable expression vector comprising a suitable promoter operably linked to a DNA which encodes at least a constant region of an immunoglobulin heavy chain and in which at least one amino acid from the heavy chain constant region selected from the group consisting of amino acid residues 250, 314, and 428 is substituted with an amino acid which is different from that present in an unmodified antibody thereby causing an alteration in serum half-life;
- (b) transforming host cells with said vector; and
- (c) culturing said transformed host cells to produce said modified antibody.

Such a method optionally further comprises after Step (a): preparing a second replicable expression vector comprising a promoter operably linked to a DNA which encodes a complementary immunoglobulin light chain and wherein said cell line is further transformed with said vector.

5 To generate the DNA in Step (a), the amino acid substitutions can be introduced by mutagenesis, including, but not limited to, site-directed mutagenesis (Kunkel, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 82:488-492 (1985)), PCR mutagenesis (Higuchi, in "PCR Protocols: A Guide to Methods and Applications", Academic Press, San Diego (1990) pp. 177-183), and cassette mutagenesis (Wells et al., Gene 34:315-323 (1985)). Preferably, site-directed  
10 mutagenesis is performed by the overlap-extension PCR method, which is disclosed in the Examples (Higuchi, in "PCR Technology: Principles and Applications for DNA Amplification", Stockton Press, New York (1989), pp. 61-70).

The technique of overlap-extension PCR (Higuchi, *ibid.*) can be used to introduce any desired mutation(s) into a target sequence (the starting DNA). For example, as shown  
15 in Figure 4, the first round of PCR in the overlap-extension method involves amplifying the target sequence with an outside primer (primer 1) and an internal mutagenesis primer (primer 3), and separately with a second outside primer (primer 4) and an internal primer (primer 2), yielding two PCR segments (segments A and B). The internal mutagenesis primer (primer 3) is designed to contain mismatches to the target sequence specifying the  
20 desired mutation(s). In the second round of PCR, the products of the first round of PCR (segments A and B) are amplified by PCR using the two outside primers (primers 1 and 4). The resulting full-length PCR segment (segment C) is digested with restriction enzymes and the resulting restriction fragment is cloned into an appropriate vector.

As the first step of mutagenesis, the starting DNA is operably cloned into a  
25 mutagenesis vector. The primers are designed to reflect the desired amino acid substitution (see more details in the Examples). In one example, the vectors used for *in vitro* mutagenesis can be used for directing protein expression. Thus, the resulting DNA of the overlap-extension PCR can be cloned back into the mutagenesis vector so that an expression vector comprising the DNA with the desired mutation is created. An example of the  
30 mutagenesis vector comprising the starting DNA includes, but is not limited to, pVag2M3-OST577.

For example, the mutations at position 250 were made by amplifying the region surrounding the PinAI-BamHI fragment of pVag2M3-OST577 (see the restriction map in Figure 5A) in a two step process using the overlap-extension method described above, then

digesting the resulting PCR segment with PnaI and BamHI, and cloning the resulting restriction fragment into pVAg2M3-OST577. Similarly, the mutations at position 314 or 428 were made by amplifying the region surrounding the PmlI-BamHI fragment by overlap-extension PCR, then digesting the resulting PCR segments with PmlI and BamHI, and  
5 cloning the resulting restriction fragments into pVAg2M3-OST577.

The starting DNA can be a DNA encoding an entire unmodified antibody, an entire immunoglobulin heavy chain of an unmodified antibody, the constant region of a heavy chain, or part of the heavy chain constant region of an unmodified antibody as long as the amino acid residue that is going to be modified is included.

10 If the DNA encoding an entire unmodified antibody is used as the starting DNA for mutagenesis, the entire modified antibody can be produced by performing Steps (a), (b), and (c) of the method described herein. The step between Step (a) and Step (b) of said method for generating the complementary light chain would not be necessary.

If the starting DNA for mutagenesis is a DNA encoding the entire heavy chain of an  
15 unmodified antibody, mutagenesis will give rise to a vector comprising the DNA encoding the entire modified heavy chain. In order to produce an entire modified antibody, the step between Steps (a) and (b) of the method disclosed herein is performed. That is, another replicable expression vector comprising a suitable promoter operably linked to a DNA encoding the complementary immunoglobulin light chain is co-transfected into the same  
20 host cells. As a result, both the complementary light chain and the modified heavy chain are expressed in the same host cells and assembled properly to give rise to the entire modified antibody. An example of said expression vector comprising a DNA encoding an immunoglobulin light chain includes, but is not limited to, pVA $\lambda$ 2-OST577.

If the starting DNA for mutagenesis is a DNA encoding part of the heavy chain  
25 constant region, such as a C<sub>H</sub>2-C<sub>H</sub>3 segment or an Fc domain, the resulting DNA encoding such a modified partial heavy chain is first connected in frame with the remaining unmodified heavy chain, so that the DNA encoding an entire heavy chain with the modification described herein in Step (a) is generated. An entire modified antibody is then produced by co-transfecting host cells with the vector comprising the DNA encoding a  
30 complementary light chain and the vector comprising the DNA encoding such modified heavy chain. The connection of the DNA encoding the modified partial heavy chain and the remaining unmodified heavy chain can be achieved by using the standard molecular cloning techniques known in the art of molecular biology, such as restriction digestions and

ligations (Sambrook and Russell, "Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual", 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, New York (2001)).

The light and heavy chains can be cloned in the same or different expression vectors. The DNA segments encoding immunoglobulin chains are operably linked to control sequences in the expression vector(s) that ensure the expression of immunoglobulin polypeptides. Such control sequences include a signal sequence, a promoter, an enhancer, and a transcription termination sequence (see Queen et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:10029-10033 (1989); WO90/07861; Co et al., J. Immunol. 148:1149-1154 (1992); "Antibody Engineering: A Practical Guide", Borrebaeck, Ed., Freeman, New York (1997)) which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety for all purposes).

Host cells are transformed by using the techniques known in the art, such as liposome, calcium phosphate, electroporation, etc. (Sambrook and Russell, op. cit.). Preferably, the host cells are transiently transfected using the liposome method.

The host cells used to produce the modified antibody of the present invention may be cultured in a variety of media known in the arts.

Modified antibodies described herein can be produced intracellularly, in the periplasmic space, or directly secreted into the medium. Preferably, the modified antibodies in the present invention are secreted into culture media. The media of the host cell culture producing modified antibodies are collected and cell debris is spun down by centrifugation. The supernatants are collected and subjected to the protein expression assays (see more details in the Examples).

The expression of a modified antibody is confirmed by gel electrophoresis using SDS-PAGE reducing or non-reducing protein gel analysis, or any other techniques known in the art. ELISA can also be used to detect both the expression of a modified antibody and the quantity of that antibody.

Modified antibodies should retain proper binding to antigens as compared with the unmodified antibodies. Accordingly, proper antibody-antigen binding is tested by the procedures known in the art of immunology, such as ELISA. Additional experiments can be performed to confirm that modified antibodies have structural properties similar to those of unmodified antibodies. These experiments include, but are not limited to, SDS-PAGE, SEC, ELISA, and protein A binding assays. The protein A binding assay is preferred since protein A binds to the same region of the C<sub>H</sub>2-C<sub>H</sub>3 junction as FcRn, although the binding involves different residues.

Modified antibodies prepared from host cells can be purified using the techniques known in the art, including, but not limited to, gel filtration and column chromatography (e.g., affinity chromatography by protein A, cation exchange chromatography, anion exchange chromatography, and gel filtration). The minimum acceptable purity of the antibody for use in pharmaceutical formulation will be 90%, with 95% preferred, 98% more preferred and 99% or higher the most preferred.

The binding affinities of the produced antibodies for FcRn can be detected by performing a competitive binding assay at pH 6.0, the optimal condition for binding to FcRn. The binding affinities can be tested by immobilizing FcRn on a solid substrate such as a Sepharose<sup>®</sup> bead. Alternatively, the binding affinities can be evaluated using an ELISA. Preferably, the present invention tests the binding affinities by carrying out a competitive binding assay in a cell-based system. A dilution series of a produced modified antibody and the unmodified antibody are compared for binding to FcRn expressed on a cell line, preferably an NS0 cell line. The experimental procedures for carrying out a competitive binding assay are described in detail in the Examples.

The experiments in the present invention show that similar binding affinity results can be achieved with purified antibodies or culture supernatants of the cells producing antibodies. Accordingly, supernatants can be used directly to test the binding affinities for FcRn of the produced antibodies in order to confirm that the desired alteration of the binding affinities has been accomplished. After such a confirmation, the produced antibody is subjected to more complex purification procedures.

Direct binding assays should also be performed to confirm that the modified antibodies bind to the FcRn in a pH-dependent manner. In particular, the binding affinity of the modified antibodies for FcRn is tested both at pH 6.0 and at pH 8.0 (see more details in Examples). In general, the binding affinity at pH 6.0 should exceed that at pH 8.0.

Biological stability (or serum half-life) may be measured by a variety of *in vitro* or *in vivo* means, for example, by using a radiolabeled protein and measuring levels of serum radioactivity as a function of time, or by assaying the levels of intact antibody (of known specificity) present in the serum using ELISA as a function of time, with a particularly preferred measure of increased biological stability being evidenced by increased serum half-life and decreased clearance rates.

The present invention provides for the polynucleotide molecules encoding the modified antibodies, or the polynucleotide molecules encoding a modified partial or full

heavy chain of the modified antibodies, such as the constant regions, Fc regions or C<sub>H</sub>2-C<sub>H</sub>3 regions, with the mutations described herein.

The present invention provides for the vectors comprising the polynucleotide molecules encoding the modified antibodies, or the polynucleotide molecules encoding the modified partial or full heavy chains of the modified antibodies, such as the constant regions, Fc regions or C<sub>H</sub>2-C<sub>H</sub>3 regions, with the mutations (substitutions) described herein.

The present invention includes a host cell containing said vectors comprising said nucleic acid molecules as described herein. Suitable host cells for the expression of the modified antibodies described herein are derived from prokaryotic organisms such as *Escherichia coli*, or eukaryotic multi-cellular organisms, including yeasts, plants, insects, and mammals.

*E. coli* is one prokaryotic host particularly useful for cloning and/or expressing the DNA sequences of the present invention. Other microbial hosts suitable for use include bacilli, such as *Bacillus subtilis*, and other *enterobacteriaceae*, such as *Salmonella*, *Serratia*, and various *Pseudomonas* species. In these prokaryotic hosts, one can also make expression vectors, which typically contain expression control sequences compatible with the host cell (e.g., an origin of replication). In addition, any number of a variety of well-known promoters can be present, such as the lactose promoter system, a tryptophan (trp) promoter system, a beta-lactamase promoter system, or a promoter system from phage lambda. The promoters typically control expression, optionally with an operator sequence, and have ribosome binding site sequences and the like, for initiating and completing transcription and translation.

Other microbes, such as yeast, can also be used for expression. *Saccharomyces* is a preferred host, with suitable vectors having expression control sequences, such as promoters, including 3-phosphoglycerate kinase or other glycolytic enzymes, and an origin of replication, termination sequences and the like as desired.

Plants and plant cell cultures can be used for expression of the DNA sequence of the invention (Larrick and Fry, Hum. Antibodies Hybridomas 2:172-189 (1991); Benvenuto et al., Plant Mol. Biol. 17:865-874 (1991); During et al., Plant Mol. Biol. 15:281-293 (1990); Hiatt et al., Nature 342:76-78 (1989)). Preferable plant hosts include, for example: *Arabidopsis*, *Nicotiana tabacum*, *Nicotiana rustica*, and *Solanum tuberosum*. A preferred expression cassette for expressing polynucleotide sequences encoding the modified antibodies of the invention is the plasmid pMOG18 in which the inserted polynucleotide sequence encoding the modified antibody is operably linked to a CaMV 35S promoter with

a duplicated enhancer; pMOG18 is used according to the method of Sijmons et al., Bio/Technology 8:217-221 (1990). Alternatively, a preferred embodiment for the expression of modified antibodies in plants follows the methods of Hiatt et al., supra, with the substitution of polynucleotide sequences encoding the modified antibodies of the invention for the immunoglobulin sequences used by Hiatt et al., supra. *Agrobacterium tumifaciens* T-DNA-based vectors can also be used for expressing the DNA sequences of the invention; preferably such vectors include a marker gene encoding spectinomycin-resistance or another selectable marker.

Insect cell culture can also be used to produce the modified antibodies of the invention, typically using a baculovirus-based expression system. The modified antibodies can be produced by expressing polynucleotide sequences encoding the modified antibodies according to the methods of Putlitz et al., Bio/Technology 8:651-654 (1990).

In addition to microorganisms and plants, mammalian cell culture can also be used to express and produce the polypeptides of the present invention (see Winnacker, "From Genes to Clones", VCH Publishers, New York (1987)). Mammalian cells are actually preferred, because a number of suitable host cell lines capable of secreting intact immunoglobulins have been developed in the art, and include the CHO cell lines, various COS cell lines, HeLa cells, preferably myeloma cell lines, etc., or transformed B-cells or hybridomas. Expression vectors for these cells can include expression control sequences, such as an origin of replication, a promoter, an enhancer (Queen et al., Immunol. Rev. 89:49-68 (1986)), and necessary processing information sites, such as ribosome binding sites, RNA splice sites, polyadenylation sites, and transcriptional terminator sequences. Preferred expression control sequences are promoters derived from immunoglobulin genes, SV40, adenovirus, bovine papilloma virus, cytomegalovirus and the like. Generally, a selectable marker, such as a neo expression cassette, is included in the expression vector.

The present invention provides for a method of making an agent with altered FcRn binding affinity and/or serum half-life by conjugating or otherwise binding of that agent to a moiety identified as having an increased or reduced serum half-life through its interaction with FcRn. Such a moiety includes, but is not limited to, a modified IgG or a modified partial or full heavy chain comprising the amino acid substitutions described herein. Such agents would include, but are not limited to, antibodies, fragments of antibodies, hormones, receptor ligands, immunotoxins, therapeutic drugs of any kind, T-cell receptor binding antigens, and any other agents that may be bound to the increased serum half-life moieties of the present invention. To create a fusion protein with an altered *in vivo* stability, DNA



segments encoding such proteins may be operatively incorporated into a recombinant vector, in frame with the constant region of a modified antibody, whether upstream or downstream, in a position so as to render the vector capable of expressing a fusion protein comprising such a protein operably linked with the constant region. Techniques for the manipulation of DNA segments in this manner, for example, by genetic engineering using restriction endonucleases, will be known to those of skill in the art in light of both the present disclosure and references such as Sambrook and Russell, *supra*.

The above method is proposed for use in the generation of a series of therapeutic compounds with improved biological stability. Such compounds include, for example, interleukin-2, insulin, interleukin-4, and interferon gamma, or even T cell receptors. The recombinant Fc domains of this invention are also contemplated to be of use in stabilizing a wide range of drugs, which would likely alleviate the need for their repeated administration. However, the present methods are not limited solely to the production of proteins for human administration, and may be employed to produce large quantities of any protein with increased stability, such as may be used, for example, in immunization protocols, in animal treatment by veterinarians, or in rodent *in vivo* therapy models.

### **III. Uses of modified antibodies with altered FcRn binding affinity and/or serum half-lives**

The present invention provides for a composition comprising the modified antibodies described herein and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. The compositions for parenteral administration commonly comprise a solution of the antibody or a cocktail thereof dissolved in an acceptable carrier, preferably an aqueous carrier. A variety of aqueous carriers can be used, e.g., water, buffered water, 0.4% saline, 0.3% glycine and the like. These solutions are sterile and generally free of particulate matter. The compositions can contain pharmaceutically acceptable auxiliary substances as required to approximate physiological conditions such as pH adjusting and buffering agents, toxicity adjusting agents and the like, for example sodium acetate, sodium chloride, potassium chloride, calcium chloride, sodium lactate. The concentration of the antibodies in these formulations can vary widely, i.e., from less than about 0.01%, usually at least about 0.1% to as much as 5% by weight and are selected primarily based on fluid volumes, and viscosities in accordance with the particular mode of administration selected.

A typical composition for intravenous infusion can be made up to contain 250 ml of sterile Ringer's solution, and 10 mg to 100 mg of antibody (see "Remington's Pharmaceutical Science", 15<sup>th</sup> ed., Mack Publishing Company, Easton, PA (1980)).

The modified antibodies in the present invention can be used for various non-therapeutic purposes. They may be used as an affinity purification agent. They may also be useful in diagnostic assays, such as detecting expression of an antigen of interest in specific cells, tissues, or serum. For diagnostic applications, the antibodies typically will be labeled with a detectable moiety, including radioisotopes, fluorescent labels, and various enzyme substrate labels. The antibodies may also be employed in any known assay method, such as competitive binding assays, direct and indirect sandwich assays, and immunoprecipitation assays. The antibodies may also be used for *in vivo* diagnostic assays. Generally, the antibodies are labeled with a radionucleotide so that the antigen or cell expressing it can be localized using immunoscintigraphy.

Kits can also be supplied for use with the modified antibodies in the protection against or detection of a cellular activity or for the presence of a selected cell surface receptor or the diagnosis of disease. Thus, the subject composition of the present invention may be provided, usually in a lyophilized form in a container, either alone or in conjunction with additional antibodies specific for the desired cell type. The modified antibodies, which may be conjugated to a label or toxin, or unconjugated, are included in the kits with buffers, such as Tris, phosphate, carbonate, etc., stabilizers, biocides, inert proteins, e.g., serum albumin, or the like, and a set of instructions for use. Generally, these materials will be present in less than about 5% wt. based on the amount of active antibody, and usually present in total amount of at least about 0.001% wt. based again on the antibody concentration. Frequently, it will be desirable to include an inert extender or excipient to dilute the active ingredients, where the excipient may be present in from about 1 to 99% wt. of the total composition. Where a second antibody capable of binding to the modified antibody is employed in an assay, this will usually be present in a separate vial. The second antibody is typically conjugated to a label and formulated in an analogous manner with the antibody formulations described above.

The modified antibodies have various therapeutic applications. The modified antibodies may be used to treat a patient suffering from, or predisposed to, a disease or disorder, who could benefit from administration of the modified antibodies. The conditions that can be treated with the antibodies include cancer; inflammatory conditions such as asthma; autoimmune diseases; and viral infections, etc.

The cancers that can be treated by the antibodies described herein include, but are not limited to, breast cancer, squamous cell cancer, small cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma, and various types of head and neck cancer.

The autoimmune diseases include, but are not limited to, Addison's disease, autoimmune diseases of the ear, autoimmune diseases of the eye such as uveitis, autoimmune hepatitis, Crohn's disease, diabetes (Type I), epididymitis, glomerulonephritis, Graves' disease, Guillain-Barre syndrome, Hashimoto's disease, hemolytic anemia, systemic lupus erythematosus, multiple sclerosis, myasthenia gravis, pemphigus vulgaris, psoriasis, rheumatoid arthritis, sarcoidosis, scleroderma, Sjogren's syndrome, spondyloarthropathies, thyroiditis, ulcerative colitis, and vasculitis.

The modified antibodies with reduced serum half-lives in the present invention may be used in the treatment of diseases or disorders where destruction or elimination of tissue or foreign microorganisms is desired. For example, the antibody may be used to treat cancer; inflammatory disorders; infections; and other conditions where removal of tissue is desired. The antibody would be generally useful in that the quicker biological clearance times would result in reduced immunogenicity of any antibody administered. Other applications would include antibody-based imaging regimens, antibody-based drug removal, or creation of immunotoxins with a shorter life.

The modified antibodies with increased serum half-lives may be an anti-tissue factor (TF) antibody, anti-IgE antibody, and anti-integrin antibody. The desired mechanism of action may be to block ligand-receptor binding pairs. The modified antibodies with increased serum half-lives may also be agonist antibodies. The antibodies can also be used as therapeutic agents such as vaccines. The dosage and frequency of immunization of such vaccines will be reduced due to the extended serum half-lives of the antibodies.

The compositions comprising the present antibodies are administered by any suitable means, including parenteral subcutaneous, intraperitoneal, intrapulmonary, and intranasal, and if desired for local immunosuppressive treatment, intralesional administration. Parenteral infusions include intramuscular, intravenous, intraarterial, intraperitoneal, or subcutaneous administration. In addition, the antibodies are suitably administered by pulse infusion, particularly with declining doses of antibodies.

The compositions containing the present antibodies or a cocktail thereof can be administered for prophylactic and/or therapeutic treatments. In therapeutic application, compositions are administered to a patient already affected by the particular disease, in an amount sufficient to cure or at least partially arrest the condition and its complications. An amount adequate to accomplish this is defined as a "therapeutically effective dose." Amounts effective for this use will depend upon the severity of the condition and the general state of the patient's own immune system, but generally range from about 0.01 to about 100 mg of modified antibody per dose, with dosages of 1 to 10 mg per patient being more commonly used.

In prophylactic applications, compositions containing the modified antibodies or a cocktail thereof are administered to a patient not already in a disease state to enhance the patient's resistance. Such an amount is defined to be a "prophylactically effective dose." In this use, the precise amounts again depend upon the patient's state of health and general level of immunity, but generally range from 0.1 to 100 mg per dose, especially dosages of 1 to 10 mg per patient.

Single or multiple administrations of the compositions can be carried out with dose levels and pattern being selected by the treating physician. In any event, the pharmaceutical formulations should provide a quantity of the mutant antibodies of this invention sufficient to effectively treat the patient.

The following examples are offered by way of illustration and not by way of limitation. The disclosure of all citations in the specification is expressly incorporated herein by reference.

## EXAMPLES

### Example 1

This example describes the antibody expression vectors used in the present invention.

The components of the heavy chain expression plasmid pVAg2M3-OST577, a derivative of the M3 variant of pVg2.D.Tt (Cole et al., J. Immunol. 159:3613-3621 (1997)), are as follows. As shown in Figure 5A, proceeding clockwise from the EcoRI site, the heavy chain unit begins with the human cytomegalovirus (hCMV) major immediate early (IE) promoter and enhancer (Boshart et al., Cell 41:521-530 (1985)) as an EcoRI-XbaI fragment. The hCMV region is followed by the OST577 V<sub>H</sub> region as an XbaI fragment, including signal sequence, J segment, and splice donor sequence. The V<sub>H</sub> region is

5 followed by a modified genomic DNA fragment containing the human gamma-2M3 heavy chain constant region (Cole et al., op. cit.) as an XbaI-BamHI fragment, including the C<sub>H</sub>1, hinge (H), C<sub>H</sub>2, and C<sub>H</sub>3 exons with the intervening introns, part of the intron preceding C<sub>H</sub>1, and a polyadenylation (polyA) signal for mRNA processing following C<sub>H</sub>3, followed  
10 by the transcriptional terminator of the human complement gene C2 (Ashfield et al., EMBO J. 10:4197-4207 (1991)) as a BamHI-EcoRI fragment. The heavy chain unit is followed by a gene encoding a mutant form of dihydrofolate reductase (dhfr), together with regulatory elements (enhancer, promoter, splice signals, and polyA signal) from Simian Virus 40 (SV40) needed for transcription. This region, which was taken as a BamHI-EcoRI fragment  
15 from the plasmid pVg1 (Co et al., op. cit.), was modified by converting the BamHI site to an EcoRI site. Moving counterclockwise within this unit from the original EcoRI site, first there is part of the plasmid pBR322 (Sutcliffe, Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol. 43:77-90 (1979)) comprising the bacterial origin of replication and ampicillin resistance gene for selection in *E. coli*, except the bacterial replication origin was replaced with the  
20 corresponding segment from pUC18 (Yanisch-Perron et al., Gene 33:103-119 (1985)) to increase the copy number of the vector in bacterial hosts. Next, there is a segment of SV40 (Reddy et al., Science 200:494-502 (1978)) containing the SV40 enhancer and early promoter to ensure strong transcription initiation. This segment is followed by the coding sequence of the *E. coli* dhfr gene (Simonsen and Levinson, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 80:2495-2499 (1983)). The dhfr gene is followed by an SV40 segment containing the small  
25 antigen intron, which is believed to increase mRNA levels, and then the plasmid contains another SV40 segment containing a polyA signal for ending the mRNA transcript.

The components of the heavy chain expression plasmid pVAg1.N-OST577, a derivative of pVg1 (Co et al., op. cit.), are as follows. As shown in Figure 5B, proceeding  
30 clockwise from the EcoRI site, the heavy chain unit begins with the same EcoRI-XbaI fragment containing the hCMV IE promoter and enhancer that was used in the pVAg2M3-OST577 vector, followed by the OST577 V<sub>H</sub> region as an XbaI fragment. The V<sub>H</sub> region is followed by a genomic DNA fragment containing the human gamma-1 heavy chain constant region (Ellison et al., Nucleic Acids Res. 10:4071-4079 (1982)) as an XbaI-BamHI  
35 fragment, including the C<sub>H</sub>1, hinge (H), C<sub>H</sub>2, and C<sub>H</sub>3 exons with the intervening introns, part of the intron preceding C<sub>H</sub>1, and a polyA signal for mRNA processing following C<sub>H</sub>3. To facilitate subsequent manipulations of the coding regions, overlap-extension PCR mutagenesis (Higuchi, op. cit.) was used to create an NheI site in the intron between the hinge and C<sub>H</sub>2 exons. The heavy chain unit is followed by the same BamHI-EcoRI

restriction fragment encoding dhfr, together with regulatory elements and a portion of plasmid pBR322, that was used in the pVAg2M3-OST577 vector.

The components of the light chain expression plasmid pVA $\lambda$ 2-OST577, a derivative of pVk (Co et al., op. cit.), are as follows. As shown in Figure 6, proceeding clockwise from the EcoRI site, the light chain unit begins with the same EcoRI-XbaI fragment containing the hCMV IE promoter and enhancer that was used in the heavy chain vectors, followed by the OST577 V<sub>L</sub> region as an XbaI fragment, including signal sequence, J segment, and splice donor sequence. The V<sub>L</sub> region is followed by a genomic DNA fragment containing the human lambda-1 light chain constant region (Hieter et al., Nature 294:536-540 (1981)) as an XbaI-Sau3AI fragment that was modified by PCR to encode the human lambda-2 light chain constant region (Hieter et al., ibid.), including the human lambda-1 light chain intron, the human lambda-2 light chain constant region exon (C<sub>2</sub>) and a portion of the 3' untranslated region from the human lambda-2 light chain, and a polyA signal for mRNA processing from the human lambda-1 light chain. The light chain gene is followed by a gene encoding xanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase (gpt), together with regulatory elements from SV40 needed for transcription. The function of this region, which was taken as a BamHI-EcoRI fragment from the plasmid pSV2-gpt (Mulligan and Berg, op. cit.), is to provide a selectable drug-resistance marker after transfection of the plasmid into mammalian cells. Moving counterclockwise within this unit from the EcoRI site, first there is part of the plasmid pBR322 (Sutcliffe, op. cit.) comprising the bacterial origin of replication and ampicillin resistance gene for selection in *E. coli*, except the bacterial replication origin was replaced with the corresponding segment from pUC18 (Yanisch-Perron et al., op. cit.) to increase the copy number of the vector in bacterial hosts. Next, there is a segment of SV40 (Reddy et al., op. cit.) containing the SV40 enhancer and early promoter, to ensure strong transcription initiation. This segment is followed by the coding sequence of the *E. coli* gpt gene (Richardson et al., Nucleic Acids Res. 11:8809-8816 (1983)). The gpt gene is followed by an SV40 segment containing the small t antigen intron, which is believed to increase mRNA levels, and then the plasmid contains another SV40 segment containing a polyA signal for ending the mRNA transcript.

The components of the heavy chain expression plasmid pVAg2M3-Hu1D10 (see Figure 7A) are identical to those of pVAg2M3-OST577 from which it was derived, except the OST577 V<sub>H</sub> region was replaced with the Hu1D10 V<sub>H</sub> region from plasmid pHu1D10.IgG1.rgpt.dE (Kostelny et al. (2001), op. cit.). The components of the heavy

chain expression plasmid pVAg1.N-Hu1D10 (see Figure 7B) are identical to those of pVAg1.N-OST577 from which it was derived, except the OST577 V<sub>H</sub> region was replaced with the Hu1D10 V<sub>H</sub> region from plasmid pHu1D10.IgG1.rgpt.dE (Kostelny et al., *ibid*).

The components of the heavy chain expression plasmid pHuHCg3.Tt.D-Hu1D10 (see Figure 7C) are identical to those of pVg2.D.Tt (Cole et al., *op. cit.*), except the XbaI-BamHI fragment containing the human gamma-2M3 heavy chain constant region was replaced with the Hu1D10 V<sub>H</sub> region from plasmid pHu1D10.IgG1.rgpt.dE (Kostelny et al. (2001), *op. cit.*) as an XbaI fragment, followed by a genomic DNA fragment containing the human gamma-3 heavy chain constant region (Huck et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.* 14:1779-1789 (1986)) as an Xba-BamHI fragment, including the C<sub>H1</sub>, four hinge (H), C<sub>H2</sub>, and C<sub>H3</sub> exons with the intervening introns, part of the intron preceding C<sub>H1</sub>, and a polyadenylation (polyA) signal for mRNA processing following C<sub>H3</sub>. The components of the heavy chain expression plasmid pHuHCg4.Tt.D-Hu1D10 (see Figure 7D) are identical to those of pHuHCg3.Tt.D-Hu1D10, except the human gamma-3 heavy chain constant region was replaced with a genomic DNA fragment containing the human gamma-4 heavy chain constant region (Ellison et al., *op. cit.*) as an XbaI-BamHI fragment, including the C<sub>H1</sub>, hinge (H), C<sub>H2</sub>, and C<sub>H3</sub> exons with the intervening introns, part of the intron preceding C<sub>H1</sub>, and a polyadenylation (polyA) signal for mRNA processing following C<sub>H3</sub>.

The components of the light chain expression plasmid pVk-Hu1D10, a derivative of pVk (Co et al., *op. cit.*), are as follows. As shown in Figure 8, proceeding clockwise from the EcoRI site, the light chain unit begins with the same EcoRI-XbaI fragment containing the hCMV IE promoter and enhancer that was used in the heavy chain vectors, followed by the Hu1D10 V<sub>L</sub> region (Kostelny et al. (2001), *op. cit.*) as an XbaI fragment, including signal sequence, J segment, and splice donor sequence. The V<sub>L</sub> region is followed by a genomic DNA fragment containing the human kappa light chain constant region (Hieter et al., *Cell* 22:197-207 (1980)) as an XbaI-BamHI fragment, including the human kappa light chain constant region exon (C<sub>κ</sub>), part of the intron preceding C<sub>κ</sub>, and a polyA signal for mRNA processing following C<sub>κ</sub>. The light chain unit is followed by the same BamHI-EcoRI fragment encoding gpt, together with regulatory elements needed for transcription and a portion of plasmid pBR322, that was used in the pVk vector.

### Example 2

This example describes the plasmids used in the present invention.

The OST577 heavy and light chain cDNAs were cloned in their entirety by PCR from a trioma cell line expressing human monoclonal anti-HBV antibody OST577 (Ehrlich et al., op. cit.). The heavy and light chain variable regions were converted by PCR into minixons, flanked by XbaI sites at both ends, comprising the signal sequences, V, (D), and J segments, splice donor sequences, and a portion of the corresponding introns, as outlined in Co et al., supra. The expression vector pVAg2M3-OST577 (see Figure 5A), a derivative of the M3 variant of pVg2.D.Tt (Cole et al., op. cit.), was constructed by replacing the XbaI fragment containing the OKT3-V<sub>H</sub> minixon with the OST577-V<sub>H</sub> minixon. Then the PciI-FspI fragment containing the bacterial replication origin was replaced with the corresponding PciI-FspI fragment from pUC18 (Yanisch-Perron et al., op. cit.) to increase the copy number of the vector in bacterial hosts. The expression vector pVAg1.N-OST577 (see Figure 5B), a derivative of pVg1 (Co et al., op. cit.), was constructed by inserting an XbaI fragment containing the OST577-V<sub>H</sub> minixon into the unique XbaI site of pVg1, modifying the hinge-C<sub>H</sub>2 intron by overlap-extension PCR (Higuchi, op. cit.) to create a unique NheI site, and replacing the HindIII-XhoI fragment containing the bacterial replication origin with the corresponding HindIII-XhoI fragment from pVAg2M3-OST577 to increase the copy number of the vector in bacterial hosts.

The expression vector pVλ2-OST577, a derivative of pVκ (Co et al., op. cit.), was constructed by first replacing the XbaI-BamHI fragment of pVκ containing the genomic human kappa constant region with an XbaI-BglII PCR product containing the genomic human lambda-1 constant region. The coding region and a portion of the 3' untranslated region were replaced with the corresponding fragment from the OST577 light chain cDNA by PCR, essentially yielding a genomic human lambda-2 constant region exon. Finally, the OST577-V<sub>L</sub> minixon was inserted into the XbaI site of the vector. The expression vector pVλ2-OST577 (see Figure 6), a derivative of pVλ2-OST577, was constructed by replacing the SapI-FspI fragment containing the bacterial replication origin with the corresponding SapI-FspI fragment from pVAg2M3-OST577 to increase the copy number of the vector in bacterial hosts.

The expression vector pVAg2M3-Hu1D10 (see Figure 7A) was constructed by replacing the XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pVAg2M3-OST577, containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer (Boshart et al., op. cit.) and the OST577 V<sub>H</sub> region, with the corresponding XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pHu1D10.IgG1.rgpt.dE (Kostelny et al. (2001), op. cit.) containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer and the Hu1D10 V<sub>H</sub> region.



The expression vector pVAg1.N-Hu1D10 (see Figure 7B) was constructed by replacing the XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pVAg1.N-OST577, containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer (Boshart et al., op. cit.) and the OST577 V<sub>H</sub> region, with the corresponding XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pHu1D10.IgG1.rgpt.dE (Kostelny et al. (2001), op. cit.)

5 containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer and the Hu1D10 V<sub>H</sub> region.

The expression vector pHuHC.g3.Tt.D-Hu1D10 (see Figure 7C) was constructed by replacing the XhoI-BamHI fragment from the M3 variant of pVg2.D.Tt (Cole et al., op. cit.), containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer and the human gamma-2M3 heavy chain constant region, with a XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pHu1D10.IgG1.rgpt.dE

10 (Kostelny et al. (2001), op. cit.) containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer and the Hu1D10 V<sub>H</sub> region, and an XbaI-BamHI fragment containing the human gamma-3 heavy chain constant region (Huck et al., op. cit.), respectively. The expression vector

pHuHC.g4.Tt.D-Hu1D10 (see Figure 7D) was constructed by replacing the XhoI-BamHI fragment from the M3 variant of pVg2.D.Tt (Cole et al., op. cit.), containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer and the human gamma-2M3 heavy chain constant region, with a XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pHu1D10.IgG1.rgpt.dE (Kostelny et al. (2001), op. cit.) containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer and the Hu1D10 V<sub>H</sub> region, and an XbaI-BamHI fragment containing the human gamma-4 heavy chain constant region (Ellison et al., op. cit.), respectively.

20 The expression vector pVk-Hu1D10 (see Figure 8) was constructed by replacing the XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pVk (Co et al., op. cit.), containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer (Boshart et al., op. cit.), with the XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pHu1D10.IgG1.rgpt.dE (Kostelny et al. (2001), op. cit.) containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer and the Hu1D10 V<sub>L</sub> region.

25 The base expression vector pDL172, a derivative of pVk.rg (Cole et al., op. cit.), was constructed by replacing the XbaI-SphI fragment containing the genomic human kappa constant region with an XbaI-SphI fragment comprised of an XbaI-NheI fragment containing the N-terminal portion of the M195 heavy chain signal sequence (Co et al., op. cit.), a 0.7 kb NheI-AgeI fragment, a synthetic AgeI-EagI fragment encoding a human c-myc decapeptide, flanked by linker peptides, that is recognized by mouse monoclonal antibody 9E10 (Evan et al., Mol. Cell. Biol. 5:3610-3616 (1985)), followed by the GPI linkage signal from human decay accelerating factor (Caras et al., Nature 325:545-549 (1987)), and an EagI-SphI fragment containing the polyA signal of the human immunoglobulin gamma-1 gene (Ellison et al., op. cit.).

Human beta-2 microglobulin ( $\beta 2m$ ) and the extracellular domains of the human neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn) alpha chain were cloned by PCR from a cDNA library prepared from human peripheral blood mononuclear cells. The human FcRn alpha chain gene was modified by PCR to add a flanking NheI site and the C-terminal portion of the M195 heavy chain signal sequence (Co et al., op. cit.) at the 5' end, and a flanking AgeI site at the 3' end, and used to replace the NheI-AgeI fragment of pDL172, resulting in expression vector pDL172 + HuFcRn. The human  $\beta 2m$  gene was modified by PCR to add flanking XbaI and SalI sites at the 5' and 3' ends, respectively, and to remove an internal EcoRI site. The resulting XbaI-SalI fragment was subcloned into an intermediate vector, flanked on its 5' end by an EcoRI-XbaI fragment containing the hCMV IE promoter and enhancer (Boshart et al., op. cit.), and on its 3' end by a SalI-BamHI fragment containing the polyadenylation signal of the murine immunoglobulin gamma-2a gene (Kostelny et al. (1992), op. cit.), followed by a BamHI-EcoRI fragment containing the transcriptional terminator of the human complement gene C2 (Ashfield et al., op. cit.). The resulting EcoRI-EcoRI fragment containing a functional human  $\beta 2m$  transcriptional unit was cloned into the unique EcoRI site of pDL172 + HuFcRn, resulting in expression vector pDL172 + HuFcRn + Hu $\beta 2m$ , hereinafter referred to as pDL208 (see Figure 9A).

Rhesus  $\beta 2m$  and the extracellular domains of the rhesus FcRn alpha chain were cloned by PCR from a cDNA library prepared from rhesus peripheral blood mononuclear cells. The rhesus  $\beta 2m$  gene was modified by PCR to add flanking XbaI and SalI sites at the 5' and 3' ends, respectively, and to remove an internal EcoRI site. The resulting XbaI-SalI fragment was subcloned into an intermediate vector, flanked on its 5' end by an EcoRI-XbaI fragment containing the hCMV IE promoter and enhancer (Boshart et al., op. cit.), and on its 3' end by a SalI-BamHI fragment containing the polyadenylation signal of the murine immunoglobulin gamma-2a gene (Kostelny et al. (1992), op. cit.), followed by a BamHI-EcoRI fragment containing the transcriptional terminator of the human complement gene C2 (Ashfield et al., op. cit.). The resulting EcoRI-EcoRI fragment containing a functional rhesus  $\beta 2m$  transcriptional unit was used to replace the EcoRI-EcoRI fragment (containing the human  $\beta 2m$  transcriptional unit) of pDL172 + HuFcRn + Hu $\beta 2m$ , resulting in pDL172 + HuFcRn + Rh $\beta 2m$ . The rhesus FcRn alpha chain gene was modified by PCR to add a flanking NheI site and the C-terminal portion of the M195 heavy chain signal sequence (Co et al., op. cit.) at the 5' end, and a flanking AgeI site at the 3' end, and used to replace the NheI-AgeI fragment (containing the human FcRn alpha chain gene) of pDL172 + HuFcRn

+ Rh $\beta$ 2m, resulting in expression vector pDL172 + RhFcRn + Rh $\beta$ 2m, hereinafter referred to as pDL410 (see Figure 9B).

### Example 3

This example describes mutagenesis of the Fc region of the human  $\gamma$ 2M3 heavy chain gene.

#### *Molecular Modeling:*

An initial model of the human Fc/FcRn complex was generated based on a low-resolution crystal structure of the rat Fc/FcRn complex (Burmeister et al., Nature 372:379-383 (1994); RCSB protein databank code 1FRT). First, the rat  $\beta$ 2m of the complex was replaced by superimposing the human  $\beta$ 2m taken from a high-resolution crystal structure of the human histocompatibility antigen HLA-A2 (Saper et al. J. Mol. Biol. 219:277-319 (1991); RCSB code 3HLA) in the same orientation as that of the rat  $\beta$ 2m in the complex. Then, the alpha chain of the rat FcRn was replaced by superimposing the human alpha chain taken from a high-resolution crystal structure of human FcRn (West and Bjorkman, Biochemistry 29:9698-9708 (2000); RCSB code 1EXU) in the same orientation as the rat alpha chain in the complex. Next, the rat residues in the Fc of the complex were replaced with the corresponding residues from the human IgG1 Fc (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and energy minimization calculations were done using the SEGMOD and ENCAD programs (Levitt, J. Mol. Biol. 226:507-533 (1992); Levitt, J. Mol. Biol. 168:595-620 (1983)) to produce a model of the human IgG1 Fc/FcRn complex. Finally, the human IgG1 Fc residues of the model were replaced with the corresponding residues from the human IgG2M3 Fc (Cole et al., op. cit.), and the energy minimization calculations were repeated to produce a model of the human IgG2M3 Fc/FcRn complex, hereinafter referred to as model 1.

A second model of the human IgG2M3 Fc/FcRn complex was generated as described above, based on a model of the rat Fc/FcRn complex (Weng et al., J. Mol. Biol. 282:217-225 (1998); RCSB code 2FRT), hereinafter referred to as model 2.

A third model was generated as described above, based on the high-resolution crystal structure of a heterodimeric rat Fc/FcRn complex (Martin et al., Mol. Cell 7:867-877 (2001); RCSB code 1J1A), hereinafter referred to as model 3.

#### *Mutagenesis:*

The overlap-extension polymerase chain reaction (PCR) method (Higuchi, op. cit.) was used to generate random amino acid substitutions at positions 250, 314, and 428 of the OST577-IgG2M3 heavy chain (numbered according to the EU index of Kabat et al., op.

- cit.). To generate random mutants at position 250, the mutagenesis primers JY24 (5' - GAC CTC AGG GGT CCG GGA GAT CAT GAG MNN GTC CTT GG - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 77) and JY25 (5' - CTC ATG ATC TCC CGG ACC CCT GAG GTC - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 78) were used, where M = A or C, and N = A, C, G or T. The first round of overlap-extension
- 5 PCR used outside primer msc g2-1 (5' - CCA GCT CTG TCC CAC ACC G - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 79) and JY24 for the left-hand fragment, and outside primer kco8 (5' - GCC AGG ATC CGA CCC ACT - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 80) and JY25 for the right-hand fragment. The PCR reaction was done using the Expand™ High Fidelity PCR System (Roche Diagnostics Corporation, Indianapolis, IN), following the manufacturer's recommendations, by
- 10 incubating at 94°C for 5 minutes, followed by 25 cycles of 94°C for 5 seconds, 55°C for 5 seconds and 72°C for 60 seconds, followed by incubating at 72°C for 7 minutes in a GeneAmp® PCR System 9600 (Applied Biosystems®, Foster City, CA). The PCR products were run on a low-melting point agarose gel, excised from the gel, and melted at 70°C. The second round of PCR to combine the left-hand and right-hand fragments was done as
- 15 described above, using outside primers msc g2-1 and kco8, for 35 cycles. The final PCR products were run on a low-melting point agarose gel and DNA fragments of the expected size were excised and purified using the QIAEX™II Gel Extraction Kit (QIAGEN®, Valencia, CA). The purified fragments were digested with PnaI and BamHI, gel-purified as described above, and cloned between the corresponding sites in pVAg2M3-OST577.
- 20 To generate the T250I and T250L mutants, the mutagenesis primers KH4 (5' - GAC CTC AGG GGT CCG GGA GAT CAT GAG AAK GTC CTT GG - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 81) and KH3 (5' - CTC ATG ATC TCC CGG ACC CCT GAG GTC - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 82) were used, where K = G or T. To generate the T250C and T250G mutants, the mutagenesis primers KH5 (5' - GAC CTC AGG GGT CCG GGA GAT CAT GAG GCM GTC CTT GG
- 25 - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 83) and KH3 were used, where M = A or C. To generate the T250N and T250Q mutants, the mutagenesis primers KH6 (5' - GAC CTC AGG GGT CCG GGA GAT CAT GAG NTK GTC CTT GG - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 84) and KH3 were used, where K = G or T, and N = A, C, G or T. The first round of PCR used outside primer msc g2-1 and KH4, KH5 or KH6 for the left-hand fragment, and outside primer MGD-1 (5' - GCC AGG ATC
- 30 CGA CCC ACT - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 85) and KH3 for the right-hand fragment. The PCR reactions were done using the Expand™ High Fidelity PCR System (Roche Diagnostics Corporation) by incubating at 94°C for 5 minutes, followed by 25 cycles of 94°C for 5 seconds, 60°C for 5 seconds and 72°C for 60 seconds, followed by incubating at 72°C for 7 minutes. The PCR products were run on a low-melting point agarose gel, excised from the

gel, and melted at 70°C. The second round of PCR to combine the left-hand and right-hand fragments was done as described above, using outside primers msc g2-1 and MGD-1, by incubating at 94°C for 5 minutes, followed by 35 cycles of 94°C for 5 seconds, 60°C for 5 seconds and 72°C for 105 seconds, followed by incubating at 72°C for 7 minutes. The final  
5 PCR products were run on a low-melting point agarose gel and DNA fragments of the expected size were excised and purified using the QIAquick™ Gel Extraction Kit (QIAGEN®). The purified fragments were digested with *PinAI* and *BamHI*, gel-purified as described above, and cloned between the corresponding sites in pVAg2M3-OST577.

To generate random mutants at position 314, the mutagenesis primers kco78 (5' -  
10 ACC GTT GTG CAC CAG GAC TGG NNK AAC GGC AAG GAG - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 86) and kco79 (5' - CCA GTC CTG GTG CAC AAC GG - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 87) were used, where K = G or T, and N = A, C, G or T. The first round of PCR used outside primer ks g2-5 (5' - CTC CCG GAC CCC TGA GGT C - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 88) and kco79 for the left-hand fragment, and outside primer kco8 and kco78 for the right-hand fragment. All  
15 subsequent steps were done as described above for position 250 random mutagenesis, except the second round of PCR used outside primers ks g2-5 and kco8, and the final PCR fragments were digested with *PmlI* and *BamHI* and cloned into the corresponding sites in pVAg2M3-OST577.

To generate the L314I mutant, the mutagenesis primers MGD-10 (5' - ACC GTT  
20 GTG CAC CAG GAC TGG ATC AAC GGC AAG GA - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 89) and kco79 were used. To generate the L314Y mutant, the mutagenesis primers MGD-11 (5' - ACC GTT GTG CAC CAG GAC TGG TAT AAC GGC AAG GA - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 90) and kco79 were used. To generate the L314H mutant, the mutagenesis primers MGD-12 (5' -  
25 ACC GTT GTG CAC CAG GAC TGG CAC AAC GGC AAG GA - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 91) and kco79 were used. To generate the L314M mutant, the mutagenesis primers MGD-13 (5' - ACC GTT GTG CAC CAG GAC TGG ATG AAC GGC AAG GA - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 92) and kco79 were used. To generate the L314N mutant, the mutagenesis primers MGD-14 (5' - ACC GTT GTG CAC CAG GAC TGG AAT AAC GGC AAG GA - 3') (SEQ ID  
30 NO: 93) and kco79 were used. The first round of PCR used outside primer jt240 (5' - GGA CAC CTT CTC TCC TCC C - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 94) and kco79 for the left-hand fragment, and outside primer kco41 (5' - ATT CTA GTT GTG GTT TGT CC - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 95) and MGD-10, MGD-11, MGD-12, MGD-13 or MGD-14 for the right-hand fragment. The PCR reactions were done using the Expand™ High Fidelity PCR System (Roche Diagnostics Corporation) by incubating at 94°C for 5 minutes, followed by 25 cycles of

94°C for 5 seconds, 60°C for 5 seconds and 72°C for 60 seconds, followed by incubating at 72°C for 7 minutes. The PCR products were run on a low-melting point agarose gel, excised from the gel, and melted at 70°C. The second round of PCR to combine the left-hand and right-hand fragments was done as described above, using outside primers jt240 and kco41, by incubating at 94°C for 5 minutes, followed by 35 cycles of 94°C for 5 seconds, 60°C for 5 seconds and 72°C for 90 seconds, followed by incubating at 72°C for 7 minutes. The final PCR products were run on a low-melting point agarose gel and DNA fragments of the expected size were excised and purified using the QIAquick™ Gel Extraction Kit (QIAGEN®). The purified fragments were subcloned in pCR®4Blunt-TOPO® (Invitrogen™, Carlsbad, CA), then digested with PmlI and BamHI, gel-purified as described above, and cloned between the corresponding sites in pVag2M3-OST577.

To generate random mutants at position 428, the mutagenesis primers JY22 (5'-GAA CGT CTT CTC ATG CTC CGT GNN KCA TGA GGC TCT G - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 96) and JY23 (5' - CAC GGA GCA TGA GAA GAC GTT C - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 97) were initially used, where K = G or T, and N = A, C, G or T. The first round of PCR used outside primer ks g2-5 and JY23 for the left-hand fragment, and outside primer kco8 and JY22 for the right-hand fragment. All subsequent steps were done as described above for position 314 random mutagenesis.

To generate additional random mutants at position 428, the mutagenesis primers MGD-2 (5'- GTG TAG TGG TTG TGC AGA GCC TCA TGM NNC ACG GAG CAT GAG AAG - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 98) and KH1 (5'- CAT GAG GCT CTG CAC AAC CAC TAC AC - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 99) were subsequently used, where M = A or C, and N = A, C, G or T. The first round of PCR used outside primer msc g2-1 and MGD-2 for the left-hand fragment, and outside primer MGD-1 and KH1 for the right-hand fragment. The PCR reaction was done using the Expand™ High Fidelity PCR System (Roche Diagnostics Corporation) by incubating at 94°C for 5 minutes, followed by 25 cycles of 94°C for 5 seconds, 60°C for 5 seconds and 72°C for 90 seconds, followed by incubating at 72°C for 7 minutes. The PCR products were run on a low-melting point agarose gel, excised from the gel, and melted at 70°C. The second round of PCR to combine the left-hand and right-hand fragments was done as described above, using outside primers msc g2-1 and MGD-1, by incubating at 94°C for 5 minutes, followed by 35 cycles of 94°C for 5 seconds, 60°C for 5 seconds and 72°C for 75 seconds, followed by incubating at 72°C for 7 minutes. The final PCR products were run on a low-melting point agarose gel and DNA fragments of the expected size were excised and purified using the QIAquick™ Gel Extraction Kit

(QIAGEN®). The purified fragments were digested with PinAI and BamHI, gel-purified as described above, and cloned between the corresponding sites in pVAg2M3-OST577.

To generate the M428E mutant, the mutagenesis primers MGD-8 (5'- GTG TAG TGG TTG TGC AGA GCC TCA TGT TCC ACG GAG CAT GAG AAG - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 100) and KH1 were used. The first round of PCR used outside primer msc g2-1 and MGD-8 for the left-hand fragment, and outside primer MGD-1 and KH1 for the right-hand fragment. All subsequent steps were done as described above for position 428 random mutagenesis.

The T250E/M428F double mutant was generated by replacing the PmlI-BamHI fragment in the pVAg2M3-OST577 plasmid containing the T250E mutation with the corresponding PmlI-BamHI fragment from the pVAg2M3-OST577 plasmid containing the M428F mutation. The T250Q/M428F and T250Q/M428L double mutants were generated by replacing the PmlI-BamHI fragment in the pVAg2M3-OST577 plasmid containing the T250Q mutation with the corresponding PmlI-BamHI fragments from the pVAg2M3-OST577 plasmids containing the M428F and M428L mutations, respectively.

Several amino acid substitutions were also created at positions 250 and 428 of the Hu1D10-IgG2M3 heavy chain. To generate the M428L mutant, the XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pVAg2M3-OST577 (M428L), containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer (Boshart et al., op. cit.) and the OST577 V<sub>H</sub> region, was replaced with the corresponding XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pHu1D10.IgG1.rgpt.dE (Kostelny et al. (2001), op. cit.) containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer and the Hu1D10 V<sub>H</sub> region. To generate the T250Q/M428L mutant, the XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pVAg2M3-OST577 (T250Q/M428L), containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer (Boshart et al., op. cit.) and the OST577 V<sub>H</sub> region, was replaced with the corresponding XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pHu1D10.IgG1.rgpt.dE (Kostelny et al. (2001), op. cit.) containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer and the Hu1D10 V<sub>H</sub> region.

Plasmid DNA was prepared using the QIAprep™ Spin Miniprep Kit (QIAGEN®), and nucleotide substitutions were identified by sequencing. Large-scale plasmid DNA preparations were made using the EndoFree® Plasmid Maxi Kit (QIAGEN®). The coding regions of the OST577-IgG2M3 expression plasmids were verified by nucleotide sequencing.

#### *Results:*

In order to isolate human IgG mutants with higher or lower affinity to the neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn), which would be expected to have altered serum half-lives, random

amino acid substitutions were generated at positions 250, 314, and 428 of the human  $\gamma 2M3$  heavy chain (numbered according to the EU index of Kabat et al., op. cit.). These three positions were chosen based on computer modeling of a complex of the human IgG2M3 Fc and human FcRn (see models 1, 2, and 3, which are described earlier in the Example), which was deduced from the X-ray crystal structure of the rat Fc/FcRn complex (Burmeister et al., op. cit.). Although the wild-type amino acids at positions 250, 314, and 428 are located near the Fc/FcRn interface, these residues do not appear to directly contribute to the pH-dependent interaction between Fc and FcRn. Therefore, amino acid substitutions at these positions may increase (or decrease) the affinity of Fc for FcRn while maintaining pH-dependent binding. Among the single mutants generated by PCR-based mutagenesis were 19 mutants that converted the wild-type T at position 250 to A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K, L, M, N, P, Q, R, S, V, W, or Y; 19 mutants that converted the wild-type L at position 314 to A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K, M, N, P, Q, R, S, T, V, W, or Y; and 19 mutants that converted the wild-type M at position 428 to A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K, L, N, P, Q, R, S, T, V, W, or Y (see Table 1). Some of the single mutants with increased binding to FcRn were combined to generate several double mutants, including T250E/M428F, T250Q/M428F, and T250Q/M428L.

#### Example 4

This example describes mutagenesis of the Fc region of the human  $\gamma 1$  heavy chain gene.

##### *Mutagenesis:*

The overlap-extension PCR method (Higuchi, op. cit.) was used to generate amino acid substitutions at positions 250 and 428 of the OST577-IgG1 heavy chain (numbered according to the EU index of Kabat et al., op. cit.). To generate the T250E mutant, the mutagenesis primers JX076 (5' - AAC CCA AGG ACG AAC TCA TGA TCT CCC G - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 101) and JX077 (5' - GGA GAT CAT GAG TTC GTC CTT GGG TTT TG - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 102) were used. The first round of overlap-extension PCR used outside primer JX080 (5' - CCT CAG CTC GGA CAC CTT CTC - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 103) and JX077 for the left-hand fragment, and outside primer NT244 (5' - GCC TCC CTC ATG CCA CTC A - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 104) and JX076 for the right-hand fragment. The PCR reaction was done using the Expand™ High Fidelity PCR System (Roche Diagnostics Corporation), following the manufacturer's recommendations, by incubating at 94°C for 5 minutes, followed by 35 cycles of 94°C for 20 seconds, 55°C for 20 seconds and 72°C for 90



seconds, followed by incubating at 72°C for 7 minutes in a GeneAmp® PCR System 9600 (Applied Biosystems®). The PCR products were run on a low-melting point agarose gel, excised from the gel, and melted at 70°C. The second round of PCR to combine the left-hand and right-hand fragments was done as described above, using outside primers JX080 and NT244, for 35 cycles. The final PCR products were run on a low-melting point agarose gel and DNA fragments of the expected size were excised and purified using the QIAquick™II Gel Extraction Kit (QIAGEN®). The purified fragments were digested with NheI and EagI, gel-purified as described above, and cloned between the corresponding sites in pVAgl.N-OST577.

To generate the T250D mutant, the mutagenesis primers JX087 (5' - AAC CCA AGG ACG ACC TCA TGA TCT CCC G - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 105) and JX088 (5' - GGA GAT CAT GAG GTC GTC CTT GGG TTT TG - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 106) were used. The first round of PCR used outside primer JX080 and JX088 for the left-hand fragment, and outside primer NT244 and JX087 for the right-hand fragment. All subsequent steps were done as described above.

To generate the M428F mutant, the mutagenesis primers JX078 (5' - CTC ATG CTC CGT GTT CCA TGA GGC TCT GC - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 107) and JX079 (5' - AGA GCC TCA TGG AAC ACG GAG CAT GAG - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 108) were used. The first round of PCR used outside primer JX080 and JX079 for the left-hand fragment, and outside primer NT244 and JX078 for the right-hand fragment. All subsequent steps were done as described above.

To generate the M428L mutant, the mutagenesis primers JXM428L1 (5' - CTC ATG CTC CGT GTT GCA TGA GGC TCT GC - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 109) and JXM428L2 (5' - AGA GCC TCA TGC AAC ACG GAG CAT GAG - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 110) were used. The first round of PCR used outside primer JX080 and JXM428L2 for the left-hand fragment, and outside primer NT244 and JXM428L1 for the right-hand fragment. All subsequent steps were done as described above.

To generate the T250Q mutant, the mutagenesis primers JXT250Q1 (5' - AAC CCA AGG ACC AAC TCA TGA TCT CCC G - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 111) and JXT250Q2 (5' - GGA GAT CAT GAG TTG GTC CTT GGG TTT TG - 3') (SEQ ID NO: 112) were used. The first round of PCR used outside primer JX080 and JXT250Q2 for the left-hand fragment, and outside primer NT244 and JXT250Q1 for the right-hand fragment. All subsequent steps were done as described above.

To generate the T250E/M428F double mutant, the mutagenesis primers JX076 and JX077 were used to create the T250E mutation in a template containing the M428F mutation. The first round of PCR used outside primer JX080 and JX077 for the left-hand fragment, and outside primer NT244 and JX076 for the right-hand fragment. All subsequent steps were done as described above.

To generate the T250Q/M428L double mutant, the mutagenesis primers JXT250Q1 and JXT250Q2 were used to create the T250Q mutation, and the mutagenesis primers JXM428L1 and JXM428L2 were used to create the M428L mutation. The first round of PCR used outside primer JX080 and JXT250Q2 to create the left-hand fragment, JXT250Q1 and JXM428L2 to create the middle fragment, and outside primer NT244 and JXM428L1 to create the right-hand fragment. All subsequent steps were done as described above.

Several amino acid substitutions were also created at positions 250 and 428 of the Hu1D10-IgG1 heavy chain. To generate the M428L mutant, the XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pVAg1.N-OST577 (M428L), containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer (Boshart et al., op. cit.) and the OST577 V<sub>H</sub> region, was replaced with the corresponding XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pHu1D10.IgG1.rgpt.dE (Kostelny et al. (2001), op. cit.) containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer and the Hu1D10 V<sub>H</sub> region. To generate the T250Q/M428L mutant, the XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pVAg1.N-OST577 (T250Q/M428L), containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer (Boshart et al., op. cit.) and the OST577 V<sub>H</sub> region, was replaced with the corresponding XhoI-XbaI fragment from plasmid pHu1D10.IgG1.rgpt.dE (Kostelny et al. (2001), op. cit.) containing the hCMV promoter and enhancer and the Hu1D10 V<sub>H</sub> region.

Plasmid DNA was prepared using the QIAprep™ Spin Miniprep Kit (QIAGEN®), and nucleotide substitutions were confirmed by sequencing. Large-scale plasmid DNA preparations were made using the EndoFree™ Plasmid Maxi Kit (QIAGEN®). The coding regions of the OST577-IgG1 expression plasmids were verified by nucleotide sequencing.

*Results:*

In order to identify human IgG mutants with altered affinity to the neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn), which would be expected to have altered serum half-lives, several amino acid substitutions were generated at positions 250 and 428 of the human  $\gamma$ 1 heavy chain (numbered according to the EU index of Kabat et al., op. cit.). These two positions were chosen based on the identification of mutations at these positions in the human  $\gamma$ 2M3 heavy

chain that resulted in increased or decreased binding to FcRn. Although the wild-type amino acids at positions 250 and 428 are located near the Fc/FcRn interface, these residues do not appear to directly contribute to the pH-dependent interaction between Fc and FcRn. Therefore, amino acid substitutions at these positions may increase (or decrease) the affinity of Fc for FcRn while maintaining pH-dependent binding. Both single and double mutants that exhibited increased binding in the context of the human  $\gamma$ 2M3 heavy chain were evaluated in the human  $\gamma$ 1 heavy chain, including the single mutants T250E, T250Q, M428F, and M428L, and the double mutants T250E/M428F and T250Q/M428L. A single mutant that exhibited decreased binding in the context of the human  $\gamma$ 2M3 heavy chain (T250D) was also evaluated in the human  $\gamma$ 1 heavy chain.

### Example 5

This example describes the characterization of mutant IgG2M3 and IgG1 antibodies.

#### *Cell Culture:*

Human kidney cell line 293-H (Life Technologies®, Rockville, MD) was maintained in DMEM (BioWhittaker™, Walkersville, MD) containing 10% Fetal Bovine Serum (FBS) (HyClone®, Logan, UT), 0.1 mM MEM non-essential amino acids (Invitrogen™) and 2 mM L-glutamine (Invitrogen™), hereinafter referred to as 293 medium, at 37°C in a 7.5% CO<sub>2</sub> incubator. For expression and purification of monoclonal antibodies after transient transfection, 293-H cells were incubated in DMEM containing 10% low-IgG FBS (HyClone®), 0.1 mM MEM non-essential amino acids and 2 mM L-glutamine, hereinafter referred to as low-IgG 293 medium. Mouse myeloma cell line Sp2/0 (American Type Culture Collection, Manassas, VA) was maintained in DMEM containing 10% FBS and 2 mM L-glutamine. For purification of monoclonal antibodies after stable transfections, Sp2/0 cells were adapted to growth in Hybridoma-SFM (HSFM) (Life Technologies®).

#### *Transient Transfections:*

293-H cells were transiently cotransfected with the appropriate light chain plasmid and the appropriate wild-type or one of the various mutated heavy chain plasmids containing a single or double amino acid substitution at position 250, 314 or 428. For small-scale transient transfections, approximately  $1 \times 10^6$  cells per transfection were plated in a 6-well plate in 3 ml of 293 medium and grown overnight to confluence. The next day, 2  $\mu$ g of light chain plasmid and 2  $\mu$ g of wild-type or mutated heavy chain plasmid were combined with 0.25 ml of HSFM. In a separate tube, 10  $\mu$ l of Lipofectamine™ 2000 reagent (Invitrogen™) and 0.25 ml of HSFM were combined and incubated for 5 minutes at

room temperature. The 0.25 ml Lipofectamine™ 2000-HSFM mixture was mixed gently with the 0.25 ml DNA-HSFM mixture and incubated at room temperature for 20 minutes. The medium covering the 293-H cells was aspirated and replaced with low-IgG 293 medium, then the lipofectamine-DNA complexes were added dropwise to the cells, mixed  
5 gently by swirling, and the cells were incubated for 5-7 days at 37°C in a 7.5% CO<sub>2</sub> incubator before harvesting the supernatants.

For large-scale transient transfections, approximately  $7 \times 10^6$  cells per transfection were plated in a T-75 flask in 25 ml of 293 medium and grown overnight to confluence. The next day, 12 µg of light chain plasmid and 12 µg of wild-type or mutated heavy chain  
10 plasmid were combined with 1.5 ml of HSFM. In a separate tube, 60 µl of Lipofectamine™ 2000 reagent and 1.5 ml of HSFM were combined and incubated for 5 minutes at room temperature. The 1.5 ml Lipofectamine™ 2000-HSFM mixture was mixed gently with the 1.5 ml DNA-HSFM mixture and incubated at room temperature for 20 minutes. The medium covering the 293-H cells was aspirated and replaced with low-IgG 293 medium,  
15 then the lipofectamine-DNA complexes were added dropwise to the cells, mixed gently by swirling, and the cells were incubated for 5-7 days at 37°C in a 7.5% CO<sub>2</sub> incubator before harvesting the supernatants.

#### *Antibody Concentration:*

Supernatants from small-scale transient transfections were harvested by  
20 centrifugation at ~1,200 rpm for 5 minutes and sterile filtered using 0.22 µm Millex®-GV microfilters (Millipore® Corporation, Bedford, MA). The samples were concentrated approximately 6-fold to 0.5 ml using 6 ml Vivaspin® concentrators (50,000 MWCO) (Vivascience® AG, Hannover, Germany) by centrifugation at 3,000 rpm. Concentrated protein samples were resuspended in 5 ml of PBS, pH 6.0, and concentrated to a volume of  
25 0.5 ml as described above. The ELISA method described below was used to measure the antibody concentration in each sample.

#### *Stable Transfections:*

Sp2/0 cells were stably transfected with the appropriate light chain plasmid and the appropriate wild-type or one of the various mutated heavy chain plasmids containing a  
30 single or double amino acid substitution at position 250 or 428. Approximately  $1 \times 10^7$  cells were washed with 10 ml of PBS, and resuspended in 1 ml of PBS. Approximately 25-30 µg of light chain plasmid and 50-60 µg of heavy chain plasmid were linearized with FspI, and added to the cells. Cells and DNA were mixed gently, and transferred to a Gene Pulser Cuvette (Bio-Rad® Laboratories, Hercules, CA) on ice. The cells were

electroporated using a Gene Pulser II (Bio-Rad® Laboratories) set at 0.360 kV, 25 µF, and returned to ice for 10-20 minutes. The cells were diluted in 40 ml of DMEM, 10% FBS, 2 mM L-glutamine, and plated in four 96-well plates at 100 µl/well. After 48 hours, 100 µl/well of 2x mycophenolic acid (MPA) selection medium (DMEM, 10% FBS, 1x HT  
5 Media Supplement Hybri-Max® (Sigma®, St. Louis, MO), 300 µg/ml xanthine (Sigma®), 2 µg/ml mycophenolic acid (Life Technologies®), and 2 mM L-glutamine) was added. Supernatants from wells apparently containing single colonies were screened by ELISA after 10-14 days. The highest antibody-producing clones were chosen for expansion and adaptation to HSFM (Life Technologies®). Adapted clones were expanded to roller bottles  
10 in 450 ml of HSFM, gassed with 5% CO<sub>2</sub> in air, supplemented after 2 days with 50 ml of Protein Free Feed Medium-2 (PFFM-2) (Sauer et al., Biotechnol. Bioeng. 67:585-597 (2000)), and grown to exhaustion.

Some of the highest antibody-producing clones were also adapted to Protein-Free Basal Medium-1 (PFBM-1) (Protein Design Labs™, Inc.), expanded to 10 L spinner flasks,  
15 supplemented after 2 days with 1/10 volume of PFFM-2, and grown to exhaustion.

#### *ELISA:*

To quantitate the amount of OST577 or Hu1D10 antibody present in culture supernatants, an ELISA was performed. Immulon™ 4 plates (DYNEX® Technologies, Inc., Chantilly, VA) were coated overnight at 4°C with 1.0 µg/ml of goat F(ab')<sub>2</sub> anti-human IgG  
20 gamma chain antibody (BioSource International, Camarillo, CA) or AffiniPure™ goat anti-human IgG Fcγ fragment specific antibody (Jackson ImmunoResearch Laboratories, Inc., West Grove, PA) in 100 µl/well of 0.2 M carbonate-bicarbonate buffer, pH 9.4. The next day, the plates were washed with ELISA Wash Buffer (EWB) (PBS, 0.1% Tween 20) and blocked with 300 µl/well of SuperBlock® Blocking Buffer in TBS (Pierce Chemical  
25 Company, Rockford, IL) for 20-30 minutes at room temperature. The plates were washed with EWB, and appropriately diluted test samples were added to each well. Purified OST577 or Hu1D10 antibodies, as appropriate, were serially diluted twofold in 100 µl/well of ELISA Buffer (EB) (PBS, 1% bovine serum albumin, 0.1% Tween 20) starting at 0.2 µg/ml, and used as standards. Culture supernatants were initially diluted 1:10 in 100 µl/well  
30 of EB, then serially diluted twofold in 100 µl/well of EB. The plates were incubated for 1-2 hours at room temperature, then washed with EWB, and 100 µl/well of goat anti-human lambda light chain HRP-conjugated antibody (BioSource International, or Southern Biotechnology Associates, Inc., Birmingham, AL) or goat anti-human kappa light chain

HRP-conjugated antibody (Southern Biotechnology Associates, Inc.), as appropriate, was added at 1.0  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  in EB. After incubation for 1 hour at room temperature, the plates were washed with EWB, followed by addition of 100  $\mu\text{l/well}$  of ABTS Peroxidase Substrate/Peroxidase Solution B (Kirkegaard & Perry Laboratories, Gaithersburg, MD).

- 5 The reaction was stopped with 100  $\mu\text{l/well}$  of 2% oxalic acid, and the absorbance at 415 nm was measured using a VERSAmax™ microtitre plate reader (Molecular Devices Corporation®, Sunnyvale, CA).

*Antibody Purification:*

- Culture supernatants from transient transfections were harvested by centrifugation, and sterile filtered. The pH of the filtered supernatants was adjusted by addition of 1/50 volume of 1 M sodium citrate, pH 7.0. Supernatants were run over a 1 ml HiTrap® Protein A HP column (Amersham Biosciences™ Corporation, Piscataway, NJ) that was pre-equilibrated with 20 mM sodium citrate, 150 mM NaCl, pH 7.0. The column was washed with the same buffer, and bound antibody was eluted with 20 mM sodium citrate, pH 3.5.
- 15 After neutralization by addition of 1/50 volume of 1.5 M sodium citrate, pH 6.5, the pooled antibody fractions were run over a 5 ml HiTrap® Desalting column (Amersham Biosciences™ Corporation) that was pre-equilibrated with 20 mM sodium citrate, 120 mM NaCl, pH 6.0. The flow-through was collected and fractions with  $\text{OD}_{280} > 0.1$  were pooled and concentrated to ~0.5-1.0 mg/ml using 2 ml Vivaspın® concentrators (50,000 dalton
- 20 MWCO) (Vivascience® AG). Samples were then filter sterilized using 0.2  $\mu\text{m}$  Millex®-GV microfilters (Millipore® Corporation). The concentrations of the purified antibodies were determined by UV spectroscopy by measuring the absorbance at 280 nm ( $1 \text{ mg/ml} = 1.4 A_{280}$ ).

- For small-scale purification of antibody from stable transfections, culture supernatants were harvested by centrifugation, and sterile filtered. Supernatants were run over a 5 ml POROS® 50A Protein A column (Applied Biosystems®) that was pre-equilibrated with PBS, pH 7.4. The column was washed with the same buffer, and bound antibody was eluted with 0.1 M glycine, 0.1 M NaCl, pH 3.0. After neutralization by addition of 1/20 volume of 1 M Tris base, pooled fractions were buffer exchanged into PBS,
- 30 pH 7.4, using a PD-10 desalting column (Amersham Biosciences™ Corporation) or by dialysis. Samples were then filter sterilized using 0.2  $\mu\text{m}$  Millex®-GV microfilters (Millipore® Corporation). The concentrations of the purified antibodies were determined by UV spectroscopy by measuring the absorbance at 280 nm ( $1 \text{ mg/ml} = 1.4 A_{280}$ ).

For large-scale purification of antibody from stable transfectants, the cell culture harvest was clarified by dead-end filtration using Sartorius® filtration capsules (Sartorius® AG, Goettingen, Germany). The clarified harvest was concentrated from approximately 10 L to 750 ml using a Pellicon® 2 cassette (30,000 dalton MWCO) (Millipore® Corporation), then purified by protein A affinity chromatography on a rProtein A Sepharose FF column (Amersham Biosciences™ Corporation) using the citrate buffer system described above. The protein A eluate was concentrated in an Amicon® stir cell apparatus using a YM30 membrane (Millipore® Corporation), then the sample was buffer exchanged into 20 mM sodium citrate, 120 mM NaCl, pH 6.0, using a Superdex™ 200 column (Amersham Biosciences™ Corporation). The pH and osmolality were measured, and the concentrations of the purified antibodies were determined by UV spectroscopy by measuring the absorbance at 280 nm ( $1 \text{ mg/ml} = 1.4 A_{280}$ ).

#### *SDS-PAGE:*

Five µg samples of purified antibodies were run under reducing or non-reducing conditions on NuPAGE® Novex 4-12% Bis-Tris gels (Invitrogen™) and stained using the SimplyBlue™ SafeStain Kit (Invitrogen™) following the manufacturer's recommendations.

#### *Results:*

The IgG2M3 Fc and IgG1 Fc mutants were expressed as anti-HBV antibodies, comprising the light and heavy chain variable regions of OST577 (Ehrlich et al., op. cit.), the light chain constant region of human lambda-2 (Hieter et al. (1981), op. cit.), and the heavy chain constant regions of human gamma-2 mutant 3 (IgG2M3) (Cole et al, op. cit.) and IgG1 (Ellison et al., op. cit.), respectively. The IgG2M3 variant contains two amino acid substitutions in the CH2 region (V234A and G237A), and shows extremely low residual binding to human Fcγ receptors (Cole et al., op. cit.). The IgG2M3 Fc and IgG1 Fc mutants were also expressed as anti-HLA-DR β chain allele antibodies, comprising the light and heavy chain variable regions of Hu1D10 (Kostelny et al. (2001), op. cit.), the light chain constant region of human kappa (Hieter et al. (1980), op. cit.), and the heavy chain constant regions of human IgG2M3 (Cole et al, op. cit.) and IgG1 (Ellison et al., op. cit.), respectively. As described above, the appropriate wild-type or mutant heavy chain expression vector was transiently co-transfected with the appropriate light chain expression vector into 293-H cells for expression of OST577 or Hu1D10 monoclonal antibodies. ELISA analysis of culture supernatants harvested 5-7 days after transient transfection showed that antibody expression levels were typically 5-50 µg/ml in 25 ml of supernatant. OST577 or Hu1D10 antibodies were purified by protein A affinity chromatography for a

final yield of approximately 100-1000  $\mu$ g. Stable expression of OST577 or Hu1D10 antibodies in Sp2/0 cells typically resulted in expression levels of 5-50  $\mu$ g/ml as determined by ELISA. Yields of approximately 50-80% of the antibody present in culture supernatants were obtained by small-scale protein A affinity chromatography.

- 5 Purified antibodies were characterized by SDS polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) under non-reducing and reducing conditions. SDS-PAGE analysis under non-reducing conditions indicated that the purified antibodies had a molecular weight of about 150-160 kD (data not shown); analysis under reducing conditions indicated that the purified antibodies were comprised of a heavy chain with a molecular weight of about 50  
10 kD and a light chain with a molecular weight of about 25 kD (see Figures 10A and 10B). SDS-PAGE analysis of antibodies purified from stable Sp2/0 transfectants gave results similar to those observed with antibodies purified from transient 293-H transfections.

### Example 6

- This example describes the competitive binding analysis of mutant IgG2M3 and  
15 IgG1 antibodies.

#### *Cell Culture:*

- Mouse myeloma cell line NS0 (European Collection of Animal Cell Cultures, Salisbury, Wiltshire, UK) was maintained in DMEM containing 10% FBS. NS0 transfectants expressing recombinant, GPI-linked human or rhesus FcRn on the surface  
20 were maintained in mycophenolic acid (MPA) selection medium (DMEM, 10% FBS, 1x HT Media Supplement Hybri-Max<sup>®</sup> (Sigma<sup>®</sup>), 250  $\mu$ g/ml xanthine (Sigma<sup>®</sup>), 1  $\mu$ g/ml mycophenolic acid (Life Technologies<sup>®</sup>), and 2 mM L-glutamine) or 2x MPA selection medium.

#### *Human FcRn Cell Line:*

- 25 NS0 cells were stably transfected with pDL208. Approximately  $1 \times 10^7$  cells were washed once and resuspended in 1 ml of plain DMEM, transferred to a Gene Pulser<sup>™</sup> Cuvette (Bio-Rad<sup>®</sup> Laboratories), and incubated on ice for 10 minutes. Forty  $\mu$ g of plasmid pDL208 was linearized with FspI and gently mixed with the cells on ice, then the cells were electroporated by pulsing twice using a Gene Pulser<sup>™</sup> II (Bio-Rad<sup>®</sup> Laboratories) set at 1.5  
30 kV, 3  $\mu$ F, and returned to ice for 10 minutes. The cells were diluted in 20 ml of DMEM, 10% FBS, and plated in two 96-well plates at 100  $\mu$ l/well. The medium was replaced after 48 hours with MPA selection medium. Mycophenolic acid-resistant NS0 transfectants from wells apparently containing single colonies were expanded in MPA selection medium and



screened after about 3 weeks by FACS™. Approximately  $1.5 \times 10^5$  cells/test were incubated in 100  $\mu$ l of FACS Staining Buffer (FSB) (PBS, 1% FBS, 0.1% NaN<sub>3</sub>) containing 10  $\mu$ g/ml of biotinylated mouse anti-human  $\beta$ 2-microglobulin antibody (Chromaprobe, Inc., Aptos, CA) for 1 hour on ice. The cells were washed once with 4 ml of FSB, then  
5 incubated in 25  $\mu$ l of FSB containing 20  $\mu$ g/ml of streptavidin-FITC conjugate (Southern Biotechnology Associates, Inc.) for 30 minutes on ice in the dark. The cells were washed once with 4 ml of FSB, and resuspended in 1% formaldehyde. Samples were analyzed for antibody binding to human  $\beta$ 2m using a FACScan flow cytometer (BD® Biosciences, San Jose, CA). Several clones with the highest apparent staining were subcloned using a  
10 FACStar cell sorter (BD® Biosciences), expanded in DMEM, 10% FBS, 2mM L-glutamine, and retested by FACS™ as described above. One subclone, designated NS0 HuFcRn (memb), clone 7-3, was used in subsequent binding assays.

*Rhesus FcRn Cell Line:*

NS0 cells were stably transfected with pDL410. Approximately  $6 \times 10^5$  cells were  
15 transfected by electroporation as described above. Transfectants were identified by FACS™ as described above by staining with 100 ng/test of a mouse anti-human FcRn alpha chain antibody (Protein Design Labs™, Inc.) that cross-reacts with rhesus FcRn alpha chain, and detecting with goat anti-mouse kappa FITC-conjugated antibody (Southern Biotechnology Associates, Inc.). A cell line designated NS0 RhFcRn, clone R-3, was used  
20 in subsequent binding assays.

*Single Point Competitive Binding Assay:*

Concentrated OST577-IgG2M3 supernatants were tested in a single-point competitive binding assay for binding to human FcRn on cell line NS0 HuFcRn (memb), clone 7-3. Approximately  $2 \times 10^5$  cells/test were washed once in FACS Binding Buffer  
25 (FBB) (PBS containing 0.5% BSA, 0.1% NaN<sub>3</sub>), pH 8.0, once in FBB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in 120  $\mu$ l of pre-mixed biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3 antibody (8.3  $\mu$ g/ml) and concentrated supernatant (containing 8.3  $\mu$ g/ml of competitor antibody) in FBB, pH 6.0. The cells were incubated for 1 hour on ice, washed twice in FBB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in 25  $\mu$ l of streptavidin-RPE conjugate (BioSource International) diluted to 2.5  $\mu$ g/ml in  
30 FBB, pH 6.0. After incubation for 30 minutes on ice in the dark, the cells were washed twice in FBB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in 1% formaldehyde. Samples were analyzed for antibody binding to FcRn by FACS™ using a FACSCalibur flow cytometer (BD® Biosciences). Mean channel fluorescence (MCF) of each mutant was compared to that of the wild-type antibody and plotted using Excel (Microsoft® Corporation, Redmond, WA).

*Competitive Binding Assays:*

A dilution series of each purified OST577-IgG2M3 antibody was competed against biotinylated HuEP5C7-IgG2M3 antibody (He et al., J. Immunol. 160:1029-1035 (1998)) for binding to human FeRn on cell line NS0 HuFeRn (memb), clone 7-3. For initial screening experiments, approximately  $2 \times 10^5$  cells/test were washed once in FSB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in 100  $\mu$ l of pre-mixed biotinylated HuEP5C7-IgG2M3 antibody (10  $\mu$ g/ml) and OST577-IgG2M3 competitor antibody (twofold serial dilutions from 208  $\mu$ g/ml to 0.102  $\mu$ g/ml) in FSB, pH 6.0. The cells were incubated with the antibody mixture for 1 hour on ice, washed twice in FSB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in 25  $\mu$ l of streptavidin-RPE conjugate (BioSource International) diluted to 2.5  $\mu$ g/ml in FSB, pH 6.0. After incubation for 30 minutes on ice in the dark, the cells were washed twice in FSB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in 1% formaldehyde. Samples were analyzed for antibody binding to FeRn by FACSTM using a FACScan flow cytometer (BD® Biosciences). Mean channel fluorescence (MCF) was plotted against competitor concentration, and IC50 values were calculated using GraphPad Prism® (GraphPad™ Software, Inc., San Diego, CA). For consistency, the IC50 values shown in the Tables are based on the final competitor concentrations.

Subsequent competitive binding experiments were done as described above, except the cells were washed once in FBB, pH 8.0, and once in FBB, pH 6.0, then resuspended in 100  $\mu$ l of pre-mixed biotinylated HuEP5C7-IgG2M3 antibody (10  $\mu$ g/ml) and OST577-IgG2M3 competitor antibody (twofold serial dilutions from 208  $\mu$ g/ml to 0.102  $\mu$ g/ml) in FBB, pH 6.0. All subsequent incubations and washes were done using FBB, pH 6.0, as described above. One group of experiments was done in 120  $\mu$ l of pre-mixed biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3 antibody (8.3  $\mu$ g/ml) and OST577-IgG2M3 competitor antibody (twofold serial dilutions from 208  $\mu$ g/ml to 0.102  $\mu$ g/ml) in FBB, pH 6.0, as described above. Another group of experiments was done in 200  $\mu$ l of pre-mixed biotinylated OST577-IgG1 antibody (5.0  $\mu$ g/ml) and OST577-IgG1 competitor antibody (twofold serial dilutions starting from 125  $\mu$ g/ml, or threefold serial dilutions starting from 250  $\mu$ g/ml) in FBB, pH 6.0, as described above. A further group of experiments was done in 200  $\mu$ l of pre-mixed biotinylated OST577-IgG1 antibody (5.0  $\mu$ g/ml) and OST577-IgG1 competitor antibody (threefold serial dilutions starting from 750  $\mu$ g/ml) in FBB, pH 6.0, as described above.

A dilution series of each purified OST577-IgG2M3 antibody was competed against biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3 antibody for binding to rhesus FeRn on cell line NS0 RhFeRn, clone R-3. In one group of experiments, approximately  $2 \times 10^5$  cells/test were washed once in FBB, pH 8.0, and once in FBB, pH 6.0, then resuspended in 120  $\mu$ l of pre-

mixed biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3 antibody (8.3  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ ) and OST577-IgG2M3 competitor antibody (two-fold serial dilutions from 208  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  to 0.102  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ ) in FBB, pH 6.0. The cells were incubated with the antibody mixture for 1 hour on ice, washed twice in FBB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in 25  $\mu\text{l}$  of streptavidin-RPE conjugate (BioSource International) diluted to 2.5  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  in FBB, pH 6.0. After incubation for 30 minutes on ice in the dark, the cells were washed twice in FBB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in 1% formaldehyde. Samples were analyzed for antibody binding to FcRn by FACST<sup>TM</sup> using a FACSCalibur flow cytometer (BD<sup>®</sup> Biosciences). Another group of experiments was done in 200  $\mu\text{l}$  of pre-mixed biotinylated OST577-IgG1 antibody (5.0  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ ) and OST577-IgG1 competitor antibody (three-fold serial dilutions starting from 500  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ ) in FBB, pH 6.0, as described above.

### Results:

The relative binding of wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 or OST577-IgG1 antibodies and their various mutants to FcRn was determined using a transfected NS0 cell line stably expressing human FcRn on its surface. As described above, the concentrated supernatants were tested for binding to human FcRn according to the single point competitive binding assay and the purified antibodies were tested for FcRn binding in the competitive binding assays. Increasing concentrations of unlabeled competitor antibodies were incubated with cells in the presence of a sub-saturating concentration of labeled IgG2M3 or IgG1 antibody in FSB or FBB, pH 6.0.

The results of typical experiments with concentrated OST577-IgG2M3 supernatants are shown in Figures 11A, 11B, and 11C. As shown in Figure 11A, some of the mutants at position 250 (e.g., T250E, T250Q) were stronger competitors than the wild-type, suggesting that these mutants have increased binding to human FcRn as compared to the wild-type antibody. Other mutants at this position (e.g., T250D, T250F, T250K, T250N, T250P, T250R, T250W, T250Y) were weaker competitors than the wild-type, suggesting that these mutants have reduced binding to human FcRn as compared to the wild-type antibody. As shown in Figure 11B, none of the mutants at position 314 was a stronger competitor than the wild-type, suggesting that none of these mutants has increased binding to human FcRn as compared to the wild-type antibody. Most of the mutants at this position (e.g., L314A, L314C, L314D, L314E, L314F, L314G, L314H, L314K, L314M, L314N, L314P, L314Q, L314R, L314S, L314T, L314V, L314W, L314Y) were weaker competitors than the wild-type, suggesting that these mutants have reduced binding to human FcRn as compared to the wild-type antibody. As shown in Figure 11C, some of the mutants at position 428 (e.g.,

M428F, M428L) were stronger competitors than the wild-type, suggesting that these mutants have increased binding to human FcRn as compared to the wild-type antibody. Other mutants at this position (e.g., M428A, M428C, M428D, M428E, M428G, M428H, M428K, M428N, M428P, M428Q, M428R, M428S, M428T, M428V, M428Y) were weaker competitors than the wild-type, suggesting that these mutants have reduced binding to human FcRn as compared to the wild-type antibody.

Table 2 summarizes the IC<sub>50</sub> values (the amount of competitor antibody necessary to inhibit binding of the labeled antibody to FcRn by 50%) of the purified wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 antibody and some of its mutants for binding to human FcRn. Relative binding values were calculated as the ratio of the IC<sub>50</sub> value of the wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 antibody to that of each of the mutants. At amino acid position 314, none of the purified mutants showed an increase in binding to human FcRn relative to the wild-type antibody. In fact, all four of the purified mutants at position 314 showed reduced binding relative to the wild-type antibody. However, at amino acid position 250, one of the mutants (T250E) showed approximately 3-fold better binding to human FcRn than the wild-type antibody. Several mutants at position 250 showed slightly reduced binding relative to the wild-type antibody, and one mutant (T250D) showed substantially reduced binding to human FcRn relative to the wild-type antibody. At amino acid position 428, one of the mutants (M428F) also showed approximately 3-fold better binding to human FcRn than the wild-type antibody, while another mutant (M428G) showed substantially reduced binding to human FcRn relative to the wild-type antibody.

Since two amino acid substitutions at two different positions were identified, namely T250E, T250Q, M428F, and M428L, each showing an increase in binding to human FcRn, the double mutants T250E/M428F, T250Q/M428F, and T250Q/M428L were constructed, transiently transfected into 293-H cells, purified, and tested for binding to human FcRn. As described above, increasing concentrations of unlabeled competitor antibodies were incubated with cells expressing human FcRn in the presence of a sub-saturating concentration of labeled HuEP5C7-IgG2M3 or OST577-IgG2M3 antibody in FBB, pH 6.0.

As shown in Figure 12A, the double mutant (T250E/M428F) showed better binding to human FcRn than either of the single mutants (T250E or M428F) and showed approximately 15-fold better binding to human FcRn than the wild-type antibody. As shown in Figure 12B, the double mutant (T250Q/M428L) showed better binding to human FcRn than either of the single mutants (T250Q or M428L) or the double mutant (T250Q/M428F), and showed approximately 28-fold better binding to human FcRn than the

wild-type antibody. As summarized in Table 3, in one group of experiments, the IC50 for the wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 antibody is ~9 µg/ml, whereas the IC50 for each of the single mutants (T250E and M428F) is ~3 µg/ml, and the IC50 for the double mutant (T250E/M428F) is less than 1 µg/ml. As summarized in Table 4, in another group of experiments, the IC50 for the wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 antibody is ~12 µg/ml, whereas the IC50 for each of the single mutants (T250Q and M428L) and the double mutant (T250Q/M428F) is ~2-4 µg/ml, and the IC50 for the double mutant (T250Q/M428L) is less than 1 µg/ml.

Wild-type OST577-IgG1, the single mutants T250E, T250Q, M428F, M428L, and the double mutants T250E/M428F and T250Q/M428L were also created. As summarized in Table 5, in one group of experiments, the IC50 for the wild-type OST577-IgG1 antibody is ~14 µg/ml, whereas the IC50 for each of the single mutants (T250E and M428F) is ~3-5 µg/ml, and the IC50 for the double mutant (T250E/M428F) is less than 1 µg/ml. As summarized in Table 6, in another group of experiments, the IC50 for the wild-type OST577-IgG1 antibody is ~10 µg/ml, whereas the IC50 for the single mutant (T250Q) is ~3 µg/ml, and the IC50 for the single mutant (M428L) and the double mutant (T250Q/M428L) is less than 1 µg/ml.

The binding of OST577-IgG2M3 and some of its mutants to rhesus FcRn were tested in competitive binding experiments. As summarized in Table 7, the IC50 for the wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 antibody is ~15 µg/ml, whereas the IC50 for each of the single mutants (T250Q and M428L) and the double mutant (T250Q/M428F) is ~2-4 µg/ml, and the IC50 for the double mutant (T250Q/M428L) is less than 1 µg/ml. The binding of OST577-IgG1 and some of its mutants to rhesus FcRn were also tested in competitive binding experiments. As summarized in Table 8, the IC50 for the wild-type OST577-IgG1 antibody is ~9 µg/ml, whereas the IC50 for the single mutant (T250Q) is ~3 µg/ml, and the IC50 for the single mutant (M428L) and the double mutant (T250Q/M428L) is less than 1 µg/ml.

TABLE 2

Name <sup>a</sup> (IgG2M3)	n <sup>b</sup>	IC50 ( $\mu$ g/ml) <sup>c</sup>	Relative Binding <sup>d</sup>
Wild-type	6	10.7 $\pm$ 4.6	1.0
L314W	2	20.2 $\pm$ 2.0	0.53
L314Q	2	32.0 $\pm$ 2.3	0.33
L314A	2	68.7 $\pm$ 2.1	0.16
L314R	2	102 $\pm$ 4	0.11
T250E	1	3.82	2.8
T250S	2	12.0 $\pm$ 0.9	0.89
T250A	2	13.3 $\pm$ 0.5	0.80
T250V	3	19.0 $\pm$ 1.8	0.56
T250D	1	>210	<0.050
M428F	2	3.40 $\pm$ 0.53	3.1
M428G	1	147	0.072

<sup>a</sup> For each mutant, the first letter indicates the wild-type amino acid, the number indicates the position according to the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and the second letter indicates the mutant amino acid.

<sup>b</sup> n indicates the number of independent assays.

5 <sup>c</sup> IC50 values ( $\pm$  S.D.) are expressed in  $\mu$ g/ml (based on final competitor concentrations) and were calculated from competitive binding assays versus biotinylated HuEP5C7-IgG2M3 in FSB, pH 6.0, as described in Example 6.

10 <sup>d</sup> Relative binding to human FcRn was calculated as the ratio of the IC50 value of the wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 to that of each of the mutants.

TABLE 3

Name <sup>a</sup> (IgG2M3)	n <sup>b</sup>	IC50 ( $\mu$ g/ml) <sup>c</sup>	Relative Binding <sup>d</sup>
Wild-type	3	9.40 $\pm$ 2.87	1.0
T250E	3	2.71 $\pm$ 1.16	3.5
M428F	3	2.97 $\pm$ 0.30	3.2
T250E/M428F	2	0.639 $\pm$ 0.094	15

<sup>a</sup> For each mutant, the first letter indicates the wild-type amino acid, the number indicates the position according to the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and the second letter indicates the mutant amino acid.

15 <sup>b</sup> n indicates the number of independent assays.

<sup>c</sup> IC50 values ( $\pm$  S.D.) are expressed in  $\mu$ g/ml (based on final competitor concentrations) and were calculated from competitive binding assays versus biotinylated HuEP5C7-IgG2M3 in FBB, pH 6.0, as described in Example 6.

20 <sup>d</sup> Relative binding to human FcRn was calculated as the ratio of the IC50 value of the wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 to that of each of the mutants.

TABLE 4

Name <sup>a</sup> (IgG2M3)	n <sup>b</sup>	IC50 ( $\mu$ g/ml) <sup>c</sup>	Relative Binding <sup>d</sup>
Wild-type	3	11.9 $\pm$ 2.5	1.0
T250Q	3	4.20 $\pm$ 1.02	2.8
M428L	3	1.79 $\pm$ 0.69	6.7
T250Q/M428F	3	1.50 $\pm$ 0.31	8.0
T250Q/M428L	3	0.430 $\pm$ 0.084	28

<sup>a</sup> For each mutant, the first letter indicates the wild-type amino acid, the number indicates the position according to the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and the second letter indicates the mutant amino acid. n indicates the number of independent assays.

<sup>b</sup> IC50 values ( $\pm$  S.D.) are expressed in  $\mu$ g/ml (based on final competitor concentrations) and were calculated from competitive binding assays versus biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3 in FBB, pH 6.0, as described in Example 6.

<sup>d</sup> Relative binding to human FcRn was calculated as the ratio of the IC50 value of the wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 to that of each of the mutants.

TABLE 5

Name <sup>a</sup> (IgG1)	n <sup>b</sup>	IC50 ( $\mu$ g/ml) <sup>c</sup>	Relative Binding <sup>d</sup>
Wild-type	6	13.9 $\pm$ 4.2	1.0
T250E	3	5.26 $\pm$ 0.87	2.6
M428F	5	3.44 $\pm$ 1.22	4.0
T250E/M428F	4	0.990 $\pm$ 0.786	14

<sup>a</sup> For each mutant, the first letter indicates the wild-type amino acid, the number indicates the position according to the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and the second letter indicates the mutant amino acid. n indicates the number of independent assays.

<sup>b</sup> IC50 values ( $\pm$  S.D.) are expressed in  $\mu$ g/ml (based on final competitor concentrations) and were calculated from competitive binding assays versus biotinylated OST577-IgG1 in FBB, pH 6.0, as described in Example 6.

<sup>d</sup> Relative binding to human FcRn was calculated as the ratio of the IC50 value of the wild-type OST577-IgG1 to that of each of the mutants.

TABLE 6

Name <sup>a</sup> (IgG1)	n <sup>b</sup>	IC50 ( $\mu$ g/ml) <sup>c</sup>	Relative Binding <sup>d</sup>
Wild-type	5	10.3 $\pm$ 2.8	1.0
T250Q	5	3.14 $\pm$ 0.86	3.3
M428L	5	0.896 $\pm$ 0.304	11
T250Q/M428L	5	0.351 $\pm$ 0.144	29

<sup>a</sup> For each mutant, the first letter indicates the wild-type amino acid, the number indicates the position according to the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and the second letter indicates the mutant amino acid. n indicates the number of independent assays.

<sup>b</sup> IC50 values ( $\pm$  S.D.) are expressed in  $\mu$ g/ml (based on final competitor concentrations) and were calculated from competitive binding assays versus biotinylated OST577-IgG1 in FBB, pH 6.0, as described in Example 6.

<sup>d</sup> Relative binding to human FcRn was calculated as the ratio of the IC50 value of the wild-type OST577-IgG1 to that of each of the mutants.

TABLE 7

Name <sup>a</sup> (IgG2M3)	n <sup>b</sup>	IC50 ( $\mu$ g/ml) <sup>c</sup>	Relative Binding <sup>d</sup>
Wild-type	3	14.8 $\pm$ 2.7	1.0
T250Q	3	4.05 $\pm$ 0.24	3.6
M428L	3	1.92 $\pm$ 0.46	7.7
T250Q/M428F	3	1.77 $\pm$ 0.60	8.4
T250Q/M428L	3	0.554 $\pm$ 0.052	27

<sup>a</sup> For each mutant, the first letter indicates the wild-type amino acid, the number indicates the position according to the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and the second letter indicates the mutant amino acid.  
<sup>b</sup> n indicates the number of independent assays.

<sup>c</sup> IC50 values ( $\pm$  S.D.) are expressed in  $\mu$ g/ml (based on final competitor concentrations) and were calculated from competitive binding assays versus biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3 in FBB, pH 6.0, as described in Example 6.

<sup>d</sup> Relative binding to rhesus FcRn was calculated as the ratio of the IC50 value of the wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 to that of each of the mutants.

TABLE 8

Name <sup>a</sup> (IgG1)	n <sup>b</sup>	IC50 ( $\mu$ g/ml) <sup>c</sup>	Relative Binding <sup>d</sup>
Wild-type	3	8.86 $\pm$ 0.52	1.0
T250Q	3	2.97 $\pm$ 0.59	3.0
M428L	3	0.629 $\pm$ 0.060	14
T250Q/M428L	3	0.236 $\pm$ 0.013	37

<sup>a</sup> For each mutant, the first letter indicates the wild-type amino acid, the number indicates the position according to the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and the second letter indicates the mutant amino acid.  
<sup>b</sup> n indicates the number of independent assays.

<sup>c</sup> IC50 values ( $\pm$  S.D.) are expressed in  $\mu$ g/ml (based on final competitor concentrations) and were calculated from competitive binding assays versus biotinylated OST577-IgG1 in FBB, pH 6.0, as described in Example 6.

<sup>d</sup> Relative binding to rhesus FcRn was calculated as the ratio of the IC50 value of the wild-type OST577-IgG1 to that of each of the mutants.

### Example 7

This example describes confirmation of the properties of the IgG2M3 and IgG1 mutants in FcRn binding.

#### Direct Binding Assay:

Purified OST577-IgG2M3 antibodies were tested for binding to human FcRn on cell line NS0 HuFcRn (memb), clone 7-3, or to untransfected NS0 cells in FBB at pH 6.0. Approximately  $2 \times 10^5$  cells/test were washed once in FBB, pH 8.0, and once in FBB, pH 6.0, then resuspended in 100  $\mu$ l of antibody at a concentration of 11  $\mu$ g/ml in FBB, pH 6.0.

The cells were incubated with antibody for 1 hour on ice, washed twice in FBB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in 25  $\mu$ l of goat anti-human IgG RPE-conjugated antibody (Southern Biotechnology Associates, Inc.) diluted to 5  $\mu$ g/ml in FBB, pH 6.0. After incubation for 30 minutes on ice in the dark, the cells were washed twice in FBB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in



1% formaldehyde. Samples were analyzed for antibody binding to FcRn by FACS™ using a FACScan flow cytometer (BD® Biosciences). Mean channel fluorescence (MCF) of each mutant was plotted using Excel (Microsoft® Corporation).

*Competitive Binding Assay at 37°C:*

5 A dilution series of each purified OST577-IgG2M3 antibody was competed against biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3 antibody for binding to human FcRn on cell line NS0 HuFcRn (memb), clone 7-3 at 37°C. Approximately  $2 \times 10^5$  cells/test were washed once in FBB, pH 8.0, and once in FBB, pH 6.0, then resuspended in 100 µl of pre-mixed biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3 antibody (10 µg/ml) and OST577-IgG2M3 competitor  
10 antibody (twofold serial dilutions, from 208 µg/ml to 0.102 µg/ml) in FBB, pH 6.0. The cells were incubated with the antibody mixture for 1 hour at 37°C, washed twice in FBB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in 25 µl of streptavidin-RPE conjugate (BioSource International) diluted to 2.5 µg/ml in FBB, pH 6.0. After incubation for 30 minutes in the dark, the cells were washed twice in FBB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in 1% formaldehyde. Samples were  
15 analyzed for antibody binding to FcRn by FACS™ using a FACScan flow cytometer (BD® Biosciences). Mean channel fluorescence (MCF) was plotted against competitor concentration, and IC50 values were calculated using GraphPad Prism® (GraphPad™ Software).

*pH-Dependent Binding and Release Assay:*

20 Purified OST577-IgG2M3 and OST577-IgG1 mutant antibodies were compared to the respective wild-type antibodies for binding to human FcRn and then released at various pH values in single-point binding and release assays using cell line NS0 HuFcRn (memb), clone 7-3. Approximately  $2 \times 10^5$  cells/test were washed once in FBB, pH 8.0, and once in FBB, pH 6.0, then resuspended in 100 µl of purified antibody (10 µg/ml) in FBB, pH 6.0.  
25 The cells were incubated for 1 hour on ice, washed twice in FBB, pH 6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.5, or 8.0, and resuspended in 25 µl of goat F(ab')<sub>2</sub> anti-human IgG FITC-conjugated antibody (Southern Biotechnology Associates, Inc.) diluted to 1.25 µg/ml in FBB of the appropriate pH. After incubation for 30 minutes on ice in the dark, the cells were washed twice in FBB of the appropriate pH, and resuspended in 1% formaldehyde. Samples were analyzed for  
30 antibody binding to FcRn by FACS™ using a FACSCalibur flow cytometer (BD® Biosciences). Mean channel fluorescence (MCF) of each mutant was plotted using Excel (Microsoft® Corporation).

Purified OST577-IgG2M3 and OST577-IgG1 mutant antibodies were compared to the respective wild-type antibodies for binding to rhesus FcRn and then released at various

pH values in single-point binding and release assays using cell line NS0 RhFcRn, clone R-3, as described above.

*Results:*

The binding properties of wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 or OST577-IgG1 antibodies  
5 and their various mutants to human FcRn were confirmed using a transfected NS0 cell line stably expressing human FcRn on its surface. To confirm that binding of the mutant antibodies was specific for human FcRn on the transfected NS0 cell line, rather than occurring via some other receptor or by an unknown mechanism, the antibodies were tested for binding to untransfected NS0 cells versus a transfected NS0 cell line stably expressing  
10 human FcRn. As described above, the cells were incubated with a sub-saturating concentration of antibody in FBB, pH 6.0, and binding was analyzed by FACST<sup>TM</sup>. As shown in Figure 13, the results indicated that there was no apparent binding to the parent NS0 cell line, suggesting that the antibodies bind specifically to the transfected cells via human FcRn.

To confirm that each of the mutants generated in the present invention behaved in a physiologically relevant manner, the effects of temperature and pH on binding to human FcRn were examined more closely. Because the initial competitive binding assays were performed at 4°C, the experiments were repeated at the more physiologically relevant temperature of 37°C to show that the mutants were still active at this temperature. As  
20 described above, increasing concentrations of unlabeled competitor antibodies were incubated with cells expressing human FcRn in the presence of a sub-saturating concentration of labeled OST577-IgG2M3 antibody at 37°C in FBB, pH 6.0. As shown in Figure 14, the results indicated that the antibodies maintained their relative pattern of binding to human FcRn at 37°C.

The binding of IgG to FcRn is known to be pH-dependent: IgG binds strongly to FcRn at pH 6.0 but weakly at pH 8.0. In order to engineer mutant antibodies with longer serum half-lives, it is desirable to increase binding to FcRn at pH 6.0, while retaining pH-dependent release from FcRn at pH 8.0. To confirm that binding was pH-dependent, the antibodies were tested for binding to a transfected NS0 cell line stably expressing human  
30 FcRn and then released at pH values ranging from pH 6.0 to pH 8.0. As described above, the cells were incubated with a sub-saturating concentration of antibody in FBB, pH 6.0, washed with FBB, pH 6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.5, or 8.0, and binding was analyzed by FACST<sup>TM</sup>. As shown in Figure 15A, the results indicated that the modified OST577-IgG2M3 antibodies having the T250E, T250Q, M428F, M428L, T250E/M428F, T250Q/M428F, or

T250Q/M428L mutations all showed strong binding to human FcRn at pH 6.0, with diminishing binding as the pH values increased to pH 8.0. As shown in Figure 15B, the results indicated that the modified OST577-IgG1 antibodies having the T250E, M428F, or T250E/M428F mutations all showed strong binding to human FcRn at pH 6.0, with diminishing binding as the pH values increased to pH 8.0. The OST577-IgG1 antibody having the T250D mutation showed weaker binding (compared to wild-type) to human FcRn at pH 6.0, with diminishing binding as the pH values increased to pH 8.0. As shown in Figure 15C, the results indicated that the modified OST577-IgG1 antibodies having the T250Q, M428L, or T250Q/M428L mutations all showed strong binding to human FcRn at pH 6.0, with diminishing binding as the pH values increased to pH 8.0. These results indicated that the binding of the antibodies to human FcRn was indeed pH-dependent.

Similarly, the antibodies were tested for binding to a transfected NS0 cell line stably expressing rhesus FcRn and then released at pH values ranging from pH 6.0 to pH 8.0. As shown in Figure 15D, the results indicated that the modified OST577-IgG2M3 antibodies having the T250E, T250Q, M428F, M428L, T250E/M428F, T250Q/M428F, or T250Q/M428L mutations all showed strong binding to rhesus FcRn at pH 6.0, with diminishing binding as the pH values increased to pH 8.0. As shown in Figure 15E, the results indicated that the modified OST577-IgG1 antibodies having the T250Q, M428L, or T250Q/M428L mutations all showed strong binding to rhesus FcRn at pH 6.0, with diminishing binding as the pH values increased to pH 8.0. These results indicated that the binding of the antibodies to rhesus FcRn was also pH-dependent.

### Example 8

This example describes confirmation of additional properties of the IgG2M3 and IgG1 mutants.

#### *Cell Culture:*

Human Burkitt's lymphoma cell line Raji (American Type Culture Collection) was maintained in RPMI 1640 with L-glutamine (BioWhittaker™) containing 10% FBS (HyClone®) and 1% penicillin-streptomycin (Life Technologies®).

#### *Antigen Binding Assays:*

The antigen binding activity of OST577 wild-type and mutant antibodies was confirmed in a competitive binding ELISA. Immulon™ 2 plates (DYNEX® Technologies) were coated overnight at 4°C with 1.0 µg/ml of recombinant Hepatitis B Surface Antigen (HBsAg) (Advanced ImmunoChemical, Inc., Long Beach, CA). The next day, the plates

were washed with EWB and blocked with 300  $\mu$ l/well of SuperBlock<sup>®</sup> Blocking Buffer in TBS (Pierce Chemical Company) for 30 minutes at room temperature. The plates were washed with EWB, and premixed biotinylated OST577-IgG2M3 antibody (0.25  $\mu$ g/ml) and competitor OST577-IgG2M3 antibody (twofold serial dilutions from 33  $\mu$ g/ml to 0.033  $\mu$ g/ml) or premixed biotinylated OST577-IgG1 antibody (0.25  $\mu$ g/ml) and competitor OST577-IgG1 antibody (twofold serial dilutions from 67  $\mu$ g/ml to 0.067  $\mu$ g/ml) in 100  $\mu$ l of EB were added to each well. The plates were incubated for 1 hour at room temperature, then washed with EWB, and 100  $\mu$ l/well of streptavidin-HRP conjugate (Pierce Chemical Company) was added at 1  $\mu$ g/ml in EB. After incubation for 30 minutes at room temperature, the plates were washed with EWB, followed by addition of 100  $\mu$ l/well of ABTS Peroxidase Substrate/Peroxidase Solution B (Kirkegaard & Perry Laboratories). The reaction was stopped with 100  $\mu$ l/well of 2% oxalic acid, and the absorbance at 415 nm was measured using a VERSAmax<sup>™</sup> microtitre plate reader (Molecular Devices Corporation<sup>®</sup>).

The antigen binding activity of Hu1D10-IgG2M3 wild-type and mutant antibodies was confirmed in a FACS<sup>™</sup> binding assay using Raji cells, which express an allele of the HLA-DR  $\beta$  chain that is recognized by Hu1D10 (Kostelny et al. (2001), op. cit.). Approximately  $2.5 \times 10^5$  cells/test were washed once in FBB, pH 7.4, and resuspended in 140  $\mu$ l of Hu1D10-IgG2M3 antibody (threefold serial dilutions from 60  $\mu$ g/ml to 0.027  $\mu$ g/ml) in FBB, pH 7.4. The cells were incubated with antibody for 1 hour on ice, washed twice in FBB, pH 7.4, and resuspended in 25  $\mu$ l of goat F(ab')<sub>2</sub> anti-human kappa RPE-conjugated antibody (Southern Biotechnology Associates, Inc.) diluted to 10  $\mu$ g/ml in FBB, pH 7.4. After incubation for 30 minutes on ice in the dark, the cells were washed twice in FBB, pH 7.4, and resuspended in 1% formaldehyde. Samples were analyzed for antibody binding to the HLA-DR  $\beta$  chain allele by FACS<sup>™</sup> using a FACSCalibur flow cytometer (BD<sup>®</sup> Biosciences).

Similarly, the antigen binding activity of Hu1D10-IgG1 wild-type and mutant antibodies was confirmed in a FACS<sup>™</sup> binding assay using Raji cells. Approximately  $2.0 \times 10^5$  cells/test were washed once in FBB, pH 7.4, and resuspended in 100  $\mu$ l of Hu1D10-IgG1 antibody (twofold serial dilutions from 25  $\mu$ g/ml to 12.5  $\mu$ g/ml, then threefold serial dilutions from 12.5  $\mu$ g/ml to 0.0020  $\mu$ g/ml) in FBB, pH 7.4. A dilution series of HuFd79-IgG1 antibody (Co et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 88:2869-2873 (1991)) was prepared as described above and used as a negative control. The cells were incubated with antibody for 1 hour on ice, washed twice in FBB, pH 7.4, and resuspended in 25  $\mu$ l of goat F(ab')<sub>2</sub> anti-human IgG FITC-conjugated antibody (Southern Biotechnology Associates, Inc.) diluted to

20 µg/ml in FBB, pH 7.4. After incubation for 30 minutes on ice in the dark, the cells were washed twice in FBB, pH 7.4, and resuspended in 1% formaldehyde. Samples were analyzed for antibody binding to the HLA-DR β chain allele by FACST<sup>TM</sup> using a FACSCalibur flow cytometer (BD<sup>®</sup> Biosciences).

5 *ADCC Assay:*

The antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) activity of Hu1D10 wild-type and mutant antibodies was confirmed by measuring lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) release using human peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) as effectors and Raji cells as targets following a published method (Shields et al., op. cit.). PBMC were prepared from  
10 fresh whole blood using a Ficoll-Paque<sup>®</sup> Plus gradient (Amersham Biosciences<sup>TM</sup> Corporation) and resuspended at a density of  $8 \times 10^6$  cells/ml in assay medium (RPMI 1640, 1% BSA). Raji cells were washed three times in assay medium and resuspended at a density of  $0.4 \times 10^6$  cells/ml in assay medium. Hu1D10 wild-type and mutant antibodies were diluted to 4 µg/ml, 0.25 µg/ml, and 0.016 µg/ml in assay medium. Raji cells (50  
15 µl/well) and Hu1D10 antibody (50 µl/well, i.e., 200 ng/test, 12.5 ng/test, or 0.8 ng/test) were combined in the wells of a Falcon 96-well U-bottom assay plate (BD<sup>®</sup> Biosciences) and incubated for 30 minutes at room temperature. PBMC (100 µl/well, i.e., 40:1 effector/target ratio) were added to the opsonized cells and incubated for 4 hours at 37°C in a CO<sub>2</sub> incubator. Antibody independent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (AICC) was measured by  
20 incubating effector and target cells in the absence of antibody. Spontaneous release was measured by incubating target cells (SR<sub>target</sub>) or effector cells (SR<sub>effector</sub>) in the absence of antibody. Maximum release (MR) was measured by adding 2% Triton X-100 to target cells. The plates were gently centrifuged, and the supernatants (100 µl/well) were transferred to a Falcon 96-well flat-bottom plate. LDH activity was measured by incubating  
25 the supernatants with 100 µl/well of LDH reaction mixture from the Cytotoxicity Detection Kit (Roche Diagnostics Corporation) for 30 minutes at room temperature. The reaction was stopped with 50 µl/well of 1 N HCl, and the absorbance at 490 nm was measured using a VERSAmax<sup>TM</sup> microtitre plate reader (Molecular Devices Corporation<sup>®</sup>). The percent cytotoxicity was calculated as  $(\text{LDH release}_{\text{sample}} - \text{SR}_{\text{effector}} - \text{SR}_{\text{target}}) / (\text{MR}_{\text{target}} - \text{SR}_{\text{target}}) \times$   
30 100.

*Results:*

The antigen binding properties of wild-type and mutant OST577 and Hu1D10 antibodies to their respective antigens were confirmed using appropriate binding assays. As described above, the binding of OST577 antibodies to HBsAg was determined in a

competitive ELISA. As shown in Figure 16A, the binding of the wild-type and mutant OST577-IgG2M3 antibodies to HBsAg was essentially identical. Similarly, as shown in Figure 16B, the binding of the wild-type and mutant OST577-IgG1 antibodies to HBsAg was essentially identical.

5 As described above, the binding of Hu1D10 antibodies to an allele of the HLA-DR  $\beta$  chain was determined in a FACS binding assay. As shown in Figure 17A, the binding of the wild-type and mutant Hu1D10-IgG2M3 antibodies to the HLA-DR  $\beta$  chain allele was essentially identical. Similarly, as shown in Figure 17B, the binding of the wild-type and mutant Hu1D10-IgG1 antibodies to the HLA-DR  $\beta$  chain allele was essentially identical.  
10 These results indicate that, as expected, the mutations described at positions 250 and 428 do not affect antigen binding.

The ADCC activity of Hu1D10 wild-type and mutant antibodies was confirmed in an LDH release assay using human PBMC as effectors and Raji cells as targets. As shown in Figure 18A, using a donor carrying homozygous 158 V/V Fc $\gamma$ RIII alleles, the ADCC  
15 activity of the double mutant (T250Q/M428L) Hu1D10-IgG1 antibody was very similar to that of the wild-type antibody while the ADCC activity of the single mutant (M428L) Hu1D10-IgG1 antibody was slightly diminished compared to the wild-type antibody. As expected, the wild-type and mutant Hu1D10-IgG2M3 antibodies lacked ADCC activity. Similarly, as shown in Figure 18B, using a donor carrying homozygous 158 F/F Fc $\gamma$ RIII  
20 alleles, the ADCC activity of the double mutant (T250Q/M428L) Hu1D10-IgG1 antibody was very similar to that of the wild-type antibody while the ADCC activity of the single mutant (M428L) Hu1D10-IgG1 antibody was somewhat diminished compared to the wild-type antibody. The wild-type and mutant Hu1D10-IgG2M3 antibodies lacked ADCC activity. These results indicate that the T250Q/M428L mutation described in this invention  
25 does not affect the ADCC activity of the IgG1 form of the antibody, while the M428L mutation slightly reduces the ADCC activity of the IgG1 form. The mutations described at positions 250 and 428 do not affect the ADCC activity of the IgG2M3 form of the antibody.

### Example 9

This example describes *in vitro* and *in vivo* serum half-life assays.

30 Human IgG antibodies with higher (or lower) affinity to FcRn *in vitro* are expected to have longer (or shorter) serum half-life *in vivo*, respectively. The affinity of human IgG mutants to FcRn may be measured *in vitro* by various methods such as surface plasmon resonance (SPR) using soluble FcRn conjugated to a suitable biosensor chip, or by

performing a competitive binding experiment using FcRn expressed on the surface of transfected cells. The FcRn used in the *in vitro* affinity experiments may be of murine, rhesus, or human origin. The serum half-life of human IgG mutants with the desired properties may be measured *in vivo* by injecting suitable experimental animals (e.g., mice or monkeys) or humans with a dose of antibody in the range 0.1-10 mg of antibody per kg of body weight, then withdrawing serum samples at various time intervals spanning the expected serum half-life of the antibody, and assaying the samples for the presence of intact IgG by a suitable technique such as ELISA.

*Rhesus pharmacokinetics study:*

A non-GLP pharmacokinetics study entitled "Pharmacokinetic Comparison of Three Variants of OST577" was conducted at the California National Primate Research Center (CNPRC) at the University of California, Davis. Twelve male rhesus macaques were randomized by weight and assigned to one of three study groups. The four animals comprising each study group each received a single intravenous dose of wild-type or one of two variants of OST577 at 1 mg/kg administered over fifteen minutes. The OST577 antibodies were wild-type OST577-IgG2M3, a variant of OST577-IgG2M3 containing the single mutation M428L, and a variant of OST577-IgG2M3 containing the double mutation T250Q/M428L. All three antibodies were expressed by transfection of Sp2/0 cells and purified as described in Example 5.

Blood samples were drawn prior to dosing on day 0, at 1 and 4 hours after dosing, and at 1, 7, 14, 21, 28, 42, and 56 days. At each time point, 4 mls of blood was drawn from a saphenous vein, serum was prepared, and 2 aliquots were frozen and maintained at -20°C until use. For serum chemistry and hematology determinations, blood samples were drawn 16 days prior to the study, prior to dosing on day 0, and at the conclusion of the study on day 56.

*ELISA:*

The concentration of the OST577-IgG2M3 antibodies in rhesus serum samples was determined by ELISA using a qualified assay. Pooled normal rhesus serum (PNRS) was obtained from the CNPRC. The same lot of PNRS was used to prepare calibrators, positive serum controls, and for pre-dilution of rhesus serum samples. Calibrators were prepared by standard dilution of OST577-IgG2M3 in PNRS at 3000, 1500, 750, 375, 187.5, 93.75, 46.88, 23.44, and 0 ng/ml, equilibrated for 2 hours at room temperature, and frozen in aliquots at -20°C. Positive serum controls were prepared by spiking PNRS with OST577-IgG2M3 at 0.2 µg/ml for the low positive serum control, 0.4 µg/ml for the medium positive

serum control, and 0.8 µg/ml for the high positive serum control, equilibrated for 2 hours at room temperature, and frozen in aliquots at -20°C. Predose serum samples from each animal were used as negative serum controls.

Immulon™ 2 plates (DYNEX® Technologies, Inc.) were coated overnight at 2-8°C with 100 µl/well of a mouse anti-OST577-IgG1 idiotype monoclonal antibody (OST577-γ1 anti-id, Protein Design Labs™, Inc.) at 1.0 µg/ml in PBS. The next day the plates were washed three times with 300 µl/well of PBS/Tween (Phosphate Buffered Saline, 0.1% Tween 20), tapped dry on a paper towel, and blocked with 300 µl/well of SuperBlock® Blocking Buffer in PBS (Pierce Chemical Company) for 60 ± 5 minutes at room temperature. Calibrators, positive and negative serum controls, and serum samples were thawed and brought to room temperature before use. Calibrators, and positive and negative serum controls were diluted 1:10 in SuperBlock® Blocking Buffer in PBS. Serum samples were appropriately pre-diluted (1:10 to 1:80) in PNRS, then diluted 1:10 in SuperBlock® Blocking Buffer in PBS. The plates were washed three times with 300 µl/well of PBS/Tween and tapped dry on a paper towel. Diluted calibrators, positive and negative serum controls, and serum samples were then added at 100 µl/well in duplicate wells and incubated for 60 ± 5 minutes at room temperature. The plates were washed three times with 300 µl/well of PBS/Tween and tapped dry on a paper towel. Goat anti-human lambda light chain HRP-conjugated antibody (Southern Biotechnology Associates, Inc.) was prepared by 1:1000 dilution in PBS/BSA/Tween (Phosphate Buffered Saline, 0.5% Bovine Serum Albumin, 0.1% Tween 20), added at 100 µl/well, and incubated for 60 ± 5 minutes at room temperature. The plates were washed three times with 300 µl/well of PBS/Tween and tapped dry on a paper towel. ABTS Peroxidase Substrate/Peroxidase Solution B (Kirkegaard & Perry Laboratories) was added at 100 µl/well, and incubated for 7 ± 1 minutes. Development was stopped by addition of Substrate Stop Solution (2% Oxalic Acid) at 100 µl/well. Absorbance values at 415 nm were measured within 30 minutes after adding the Substrate Stop Solution using a VERSAmax™ microtitre plate reader (Molecular Devices Corporation®).

A calibration curve was prepared using the mean absorbance values obtained from the calibrators and fitting the data to a four parameter logistic regression curve using SOFTmax® PRO, version 4.0 (Molecular Devices Corporation®). The mean absorbance value for the negative serum control (i.e., predose sample mean for each animal) was subtracted from each absorbance value obtained for the calibrators. The positive serum



control concentrations were determined after subtracting the mean absorbance value obtained for the negative serum control from each absorbance value obtained for the positive serum controls. Concentrations corresponding to the resulting mean absorbance values were derived by interpolation from the calibration curve. The concentrations of serum samples were determined by subtracting the mean absorbance value of the negative serum control from the absorbance value of each sample, averaging the resulting absorbance values, deriving the concentration corresponding to the mean absorbance value by interpolation from the calibration curve, and multiplying the resulting concentration by the pre-dilution factor, if any, to arrive at the final concentration for each sample.

The estimated quantitative range of the assay was 0.10 – 0.90 µg/ml. The assay was considered suitable when the following two conditions were met: (1) the mean back-calculated concentration of all three calibrators in the quantitative range was within 20% of their nominal value; and (2) the mean calculated results of four of six positive serum controls was within 30% of their nominal value, and at least one mean result from each concentration level was within 30% of its nominal value. Data from plates that did not meet the above criteria were rejected. Data from individual serum samples was rejected when any of the following three conditions was met: (1) the absorbance values in duplicate wells differed from each other by more than 40%; (2) the mean calculated concentration was below the lower limit of quantitation (LLOQ) of the assay (0.10 µg/ml); (3) the mean calculated concentration was above the upper limit of quantitation (ULOQ) of the assay (0.90 µg/ml).

#### *Results:*

The serum antibody concentration data were fitted with a two-compartment model using WinNonlin® Enterprise Edition, version 3.2 (Pharsight® Corporation, Mountain View, CA). The model assumes a first order distribution and first order elimination rate and fits the data well. The modeled data (simulated based on each group's geometric mean of the primary pharmacokinetic parameters) as well as the observed mean serum antibody concentration (µg/ml) and the standard deviation for each group of four animals were plotted as a function of time (days after infusion) using GraphPad Prism®, version 3.02 (GraphPad™ Software, Inc.). As shown in Figure 19, the data indicate that the mean serum antibody concentrations of the M428L and T250Q/M428L variants of OST577-IgG2M3 were maintained at higher levels than wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 at all time points.

Various pharmacokinetic parameters were calculated from the data using WinNonlin® Enterprise Edition, version 3.2 (Pharsight® Corporation). Statistical analyses

of the pharmacokinetic parameters were calculated using GraphPad Prism<sup>®</sup>, version 3.02 (GraphPad<sup>™</sup> Software, Inc.). As shown in Table 9, the mean maximum serum antibody concentration (C<sub>max</sub>) was very similar among the three test groups, indicating that the administered antibodies were distributed to the circulation in a similar manner. Thus, the higher antibody concentrations of the mutant IgG2M3 antibodies following the distribution phase are attributable to their increased persistence in the serum. Analysis of the mean clearance (CL) indicated that this was the case. The mean CL, the volume of serum antibody cleared per unit of time, was approximately 1.8-fold lower for the M428L variant ( $0.0811 \pm 0.0384$  ml/hr/kg;  $p = 0.057$ ), and approximately 2.8-fold lower for the T250Q/M428L variant ( $0.0514 \pm 0.0075$  ml/hr/kg;  $p = 0.029$ ) compared to wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 ( $0.144 \pm 0.047$  ml/hr/kg) (Table 9), indicating a significant decrease in the clearance of the OST577-IgG2M3 M428L and T250Q/M428L variants from the circulation of rhesus monkeys compared to the wild-type.

The PK profiles of the OST577-IgG2M3 variants were further analyzed by calculating other parameters (Table 9). Since the AUC (Area Under the Curve) is inversely proportional to CL, it follows that the mean AUC, the area under the concentration-time curve extrapolated from time zero to infinity, was approximately 2-fold higher for the M428L variant ( $15,200 \pm 8,700$  hr\* $\mu$ g/ml;  $p = 0.057$ ), and approximately 2.6-fold higher for the T250Q/M428L variant ( $19,800 \pm 2,900$  hr\* $\mu$ g/ml;  $p = 0.029$ ) compared to wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 ( $7,710 \pm 3,110$  hr\* $\mu$ g/ml) (Table 9), indicating a significant increase in the total exposure of the OST577-IgG2M3 M428L and T250Q/M428L variants compared to the wild-type.

Finally, the mean elimination ( $\beta$ -phase) half-life was approximately 1.8-fold longer for the M428L variant ( $642 \pm 205$  hr), and approximately 1.9-fold longer for the T250Q/M428L variant ( $652 \pm 28$  hr;  $p = 0.029$ ) compared to wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 ( $351 \pm 121$  hr) (Table 9). The elimination half-life for wild-type OST577-IgG2M3 in this study is similar to that for OST577-IgG1 ( $324 \pm 85$  hr) in a previous PK study in rhesus monkeys (Ehrlich et al., op. cit.).

TABLE 9

Name <sup>a</sup> (IgG2M3)	Cmax <sup>b</sup> (µg/ml)	CL <sup>c</sup> (ml/hr/kg)	AUC <sup>d</sup> (hr*µg/ml)	Elimination half-life <sup>e</sup> (hr)
Wild-type	36.7 ± 12.8	0.144 ± 0.047	7710 ± 3110	351 ± 121
M428L	36.5 ± 20.1	0.0811* ± 0.0384	15200* ± 8700	642 ± 205
T250Q/M428L	39.9 ± 6.8	0.0514* ± 0.0075	19800* ± 2900	652* ± 28

<sup>a</sup> For each mutant, the first letter indicates the wild-type amino acid, the number indicates the position according to the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and the second letter indicates the mutant amino acid.

<sup>b</sup> Cmax values (± S.D.) are expressed in µg/ml and were calculated from the PK data using WinNonlin as described in Example 9.

<sup>c</sup> CL values (± S.D.) are expressed in ml/hr/kg and were calculated from the PK data using WinNonlin as described in Example 9.

<sup>d</sup> AUC values (± S.D.) are expressed in hr\*µg/ml and were calculated from the PK data using WinNonlin as described in Example 9.

<sup>e</sup> Elimination half-life values (± S.D.) are expressed in hr and were calculated from the PK data using WinNonlin as described in Example 9.

\* Indicates a significant difference ( $p < 0.060$ ) between the wild-type group and each mutant group. Mann-Whitney tests were done using GraphPad Prism as described in Example 9.

### Example 10

This example describes application of the *in vitro* and *in vivo* serum half-life assays described in Example 9 to mutants of IgG1 antibodies.

#### *Rhesus pharmacokinetics study:*

A non-GLP pharmacokinetics study entitled "Pharmacokinetic Comparison of Two Variants of OST577" was conducted at the California National Primate Research Center (CNPRC) at the University of California, Davis. Eight male rhesus macaques were randomized by weight and assigned to one of two study groups. The four animals comprising each study group each received a single intravenous dose of wild-type or a variant of OST577 at 1 mg/kg administered over fifteen minutes. The OST577 antibodies were wild-type OST577-IgG1, and a variant of OST577-IgG1 containing the double mutation T250Q/M428L. Both antibodies were expressed by transfection of Sp2/0 cells and purified as described in Example 5.

Blood samples were drawn prior to dosing on day 0, at 1 and 4 hours after dosing, and at 1, 7, 14, 21, 28, 42, and 56 days. At each time point, 4 mls of blood was drawn from a saphenous vein, serum was prepared, and 2 aliquots were frozen and maintained at -20°C until use. For serum chemistry and hematology determinations, blood samples were drawn prior to dosing on day 0, and at the conclusion of the study on day 56.

#### *ELISA:*

The concentration of the OST577-IgG1 antibodies in rhesus serum samples was determined by ELISA using a validated assay. Pooled normal rhesus serum (PNRS) was obtained from the CNPRC. The same lot of PNRS was used to prepare calibrators, positive and negative serum controls, and for pre-dilution of rhesus serum samples. Calibrators were prepared by standard dilution of OST577-IgG1 in PNRS at 3200, 1600, 800, 400, 200, 100, 50, 25, and 0 ng/ml, equilibrated for 2 hours at room temperature, and frozen in aliquots at -80°C. Positive serum controls were prepared by spiking PNRS with OST577-IgG1 at 0.2 µg/ml for the low positive serum control, 0.4 µg/ml for the medium positive serum control, and 0.8 µg/ml for the high positive serum control, equilibrated for 2 hours at room temperature, and frozen in aliquots at -80°C. PNRS was used as a negative serum control.

Immunon™ 2 plates (DYNEX® Technologies, Inc.) were coated overnight at 2-8°C with 100 µl/well of a mouse anti-OST577-IgG1 idiotype monoclonal antibody (OST577-γ1 anti-id, Protein Design Labs™, Inc.) at 1.0 µg/ml in PBS. The next day the plates were washed three times with 300 µl/well of PBS/Tween (Phosphate Buffered Saline, 0.1% Tween 20), tapped dry on a paper towel, and blocked with 300 µl/well of SuperBlock® Blocking Buffer in PBS (Pierce Chemical Company) for 60 ± 5 minutes at room temperature. Calibrators, positive and negative serum controls, and serum samples were thawed and brought to room temperature before use. Calibrators, and positive and negative serum controls were diluted 1:10 in SuperBlock® Blocking Buffer in PBS. Serum samples were appropriately pre-diluted (1:5 to 1:80) in PNRS, then diluted 1:10 in SuperBlock® Blocking Buffer in PBS. The plates were washed three times with 300 µl/well of PBS/Tween and tapped dry on a paper towel. Diluted calibrators, positive and negative serum controls, and serum samples were then added at 100 µl/well in duplicate wells and incubated for 60 ± 5 minutes at room temperature. The plates were washed three times with 300 µl/well of PBS/Tween and tapped dry on a paper towel. Goat anti-human lambda light chain HRP-conjugated antibody (Southern Biotechnology Associates, Inc.) was prepared by 1:1000 dilution in PBS/BSA/Tween (Phosphate Buffered Saline, 0.5% Bovine Serum Albumin, 0.1% Tween 20), added at 100 µl/well, and incubated for 60 ± 5 minutes at room temperature. The plates were washed three times with 300 µl/well of PBS/Tween and tapped dry on a paper towel. ABTS Peroxidase Substrate/Peroxidase Solution B (Kirkegaard & Perry Laboratories) was added at 100 µl/well, and incubated for 7 ± 1 minutes. Development was stopped by addition of Substrate Stop Solution (2% Oxalic Acid) at 100 µl/well. Absorbance values at 415 nm were measured within 30 minutes after

adding the Substrate Stop Solution using a VERSAmax™ microtitre plate reader (Molecular Devices Corporation®).

A calibration curve was prepared using the mean absorbance values obtained from the calibrators and fitting the data to a four parameter logistic regression curve using  
5 SOFTmax® PRO, version 4.0 (Molecular Devices Corporation®). The mean absorbance value for the 0.0 ng/mL calibrator was subtracted from each absorbance value obtained for the remaining calibrators. The positive serum control concentrations were determined after subtracting the mean absorbance value obtained for the negative serum control from each absorbance value obtained for the positive serum controls. Concentrations corresponding to  
10 the resulting mean absorbance values were derived by interpolation from the calibration curve. The concentrations of serum samples were determined by subtracting the mean absorbance value of the appropriate predose sample from the absorbance value of each study sample, averaging the resulting absorbance values, deriving the concentration corresponding to the mean absorbance value by interpolation from the calibration curve, and  
15 multiplying the resulting concentration by the pre-dilution factor, if any, to arrive at the final concentration for each sample.

The estimated quantitative range of the assay was 0.10 – 0.90 µg/ml. The assay was considered suitable when the following two conditions were met: (1) the mean back-calculated concentration of all four calibrators in the quantitative range was within 20% of  
20 their nominal value; and (2) the mean calculated results of four of six positive serum controls was within 30% of their nominal value, and at least one mean result from each concentration level was within 30% of its nominal value. Data from plates that did not meet the above criteria were rejected. Data from individual serum samples was rejected when either of the following conditions was met: (1) the mean calculated concentration was below  
25 the lower limit of quantitation (LLOQ) of the assay (0.10 µg/ml); or (2) the mean calculated concentration was above the upper limit of quantitation (ULOQ) of the assay (0.90 µg/ml). If the calculated result of duplicate samples differed by more than 40% from each other, the sample was retested in a second independent assay. If the mean calculated result of the second assay was within 15% of the mean calculated result of the first assay for the sample  
30 in question, the mean calculated result of the first assay was used. Otherwise, the sample was retested in a third independent assay, and the results of all three assays were averaged, unless one value could be removed by outlier testing. In this case, the mean of the two remaining values was reported.

*Results:*

The serum antibody concentration data were fitted with a two-compartment model using WinNonlin<sup>®</sup> Enterprise Edition, version 3.2 (Pharsight<sup>®</sup> Corporation, Mountain View, CA). The model assumes a first order distribution and first order elimination rate and fits the data well. The modeled data (simulated based on the median values of each group's primary pharmacokinetic parameters) as well as the observed mean serum antibody concentration ( $\mu\text{g/ml}$ ) and the standard deviation for each group of four animals were plotted as a function of time (days after infusion) using GraphPad Prism<sup>®</sup>, version 3.02 (GraphPad<sup>™</sup> Software, Inc.). As shown in Figure 20, the data indicate that the mean serum antibody concentrations of the T250Q/M428L variant of OST577-IgG1 were maintained at higher levels than wild-type OST577-IgG1 at all time points.

Various pharmacokinetic parameters were calculated from the data using WinNonlin<sup>®</sup> Enterprise Edition, version 3.2 (Pharsight<sup>®</sup> Corporation). Statistical analyses of the pharmacokinetic parameters were calculated using GraphPad Prism<sup>®</sup>, version 3.02 (GraphPad<sup>™</sup> Software, Inc.). As shown in Table 10, the C<sub>max</sub> was very similar between both test groups, indicating that the administered antibodies were distributed to the circulation in a similar manner. Thus, the higher antibody concentrations of the mutant IgG1 antibody following the distribution phase are attributable to its increased persistence in the serum. Analysis of the mean CL indicated that this was the case. The mean CL was approximately 2.3-fold lower for the T250Q/M428L variant ( $0.0811 \pm 0.0191 \text{ ml/hr/kg}$ ;  $p = 0.029$ ) compared to wild-type OST577-IgG1 ( $0.190 \pm 0.022 \text{ ml/hr/kg}$ ) (Table 10), indicating a significant decrease in the clearance of the OST577-IgG1 T250Q/M428L variant from the circulation of rhesus monkeys compared to the wild-type.

The PK profile of the OST577-IgG1 variant was further analyzed by calculating other parameters (Table 10). The mean AUC was approximately 2.4-fold higher for the T250Q/M428L variant ( $12,900 \pm 3,000 \text{ hr} \cdot \mu\text{g/ml}$ ;  $p = 0.029$ ) compared to wild-type OST577-IgG1 ( $5,320 \pm 590 \text{ hr} \cdot \mu\text{g/ml}$ ) (Table 10), indicating a significant increase in the total exposure of the OST577-IgG1 T250Q/M428L variant compared to the wild-type.

Finally, the mean elimination ( $\beta$ -phase) half-life was approximately 2.5-fold longer for the T250Q/M428L variant ( $838 \pm 187 \text{ hr}$ ;  $p = 0.029$ ) compared to wild-type OST577-IgG1 ( $336 \pm 34 \text{ hr}$ ) (Table 10). The elimination half-life for wild-type OST577-IgG1 in this study is similar to that for OST577-IgG1 ( $324 \pm 85 \text{ hr}$ ) in a previous PK study in rhesus monkeys (Ehrlich et al., op. cit.).

TABLE 10

Name <sup>a</sup> (IgG1)	Cmax <sup>b</sup> (μg/ml)	CL <sup>c</sup> (ml/hr/kg)	AUC <sup>d</sup> (hr*μg/ml)	Elimination half-life <sup>e</sup> (hr)
Wild-type	26.0 ± 4.1	0.190 ± 0.022	5320 ± 590	336 ± 34
T250Q/M428L	29.1 ± 3.7	0.0811* ± 0.0191	12900* ± 3000	838* ± 187

<sup>a</sup> For each mutant, the first letter indicates the wild-type amino acid, the number indicates the position according to the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and the second letter indicates the mutant amino acid.

<sup>b</sup> Cmax values (± S.D.) are expressed in μg/ml and were calculated from the PK data using WinNonlin as described in Example 10.

<sup>c</sup> CL values (± S.D.) are expressed in ml/hr/kg and were calculated from the PK data using WinNonlin as described in Example 10.

<sup>d</sup> AUC values (± S.D.) are expressed in hr\*μg/ml and were calculated from the PK data using WinNonlin as described in Example 10.

<sup>e</sup> Elimination half-life values (± S.D.) are expressed in hr and were calculated from the PK data using WinNonlin as described in Example 10.

\* Indicates a significant difference (p < 0.060) between the wild-type group and each mutant group. Mann-Whitney tests were done using GraphPad Prism as described in Example 10.

### Example 11

This example describes application of the various binding analyses described in Examples 6 and 7 to mutants of IgG3 and IgG4 antibodies.

#### Mutagenesis :

The overlap-extension PCR method (Higuchi, op. cit.) was used to generate site-directed amino acid substitutions at position 428 of the Hu1D10-IgG3 heavy chain, or positions 250 and 428 of the Hu1D10-IgG4 heavy chain (numbered according to the EU index of Kabat et al., op. cit.). An M428L mutant was generated in the Hu1D10-IgG3 heavy chain. Both an M428L and a T250QM428L mutant were generated in the Hu1D10-IgG4 heavy chain.

#### Transfections:

The wild-type or mutant Hu1D10-IgG3 or Hu1D10-IgG4 heavy chain expression vectors, described in detail in Examples 1 and 2, were transiently co-transfected with the pVκ-Hu1D10 light chain expression vector into human kidney cell line 293-H (Life Technologies®). The Hu1D10-IgG3 or Hu1D10-IgG4 expression vectors were also stably co-transfected with the pVκ-Hu1D10 expression vector into Sp2/0 cells, as described in Example 5. For stable transfections in Sp2/0, the IgG3 expression vectors were linearized with FspI; however, the IgG4 expression vectors were linearized with BstZ171 since there are two FspI sites in pHuHC.g4.Tt.D-Hu1D10.

#### Antibody Purification:

Culture supernatants containing human IgG4 antibodies were quantified by ELISA, harvested by centrifugation, sterile filtered, and purified by protein A affinity chromatography, as described in Example 5.

Culture supernatants containing human IgG3 antibodies were quantified by ELISA, harvested by centrifugation, and sterile filtered, as described in Example 5. The pH of the filtered supernatants was adjusted by addition of 1/75 volume of 1 M Tris-HCl, pH 8.0.

Supernatants were run over a 1 ml HiTrap<sup>®</sup> Protein G HP column (Amersham Biosciences<sup>™</sup> Corporation) that was pre-equilibrated with 20 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.0. The column was washed with the same buffer, and bound antibody was eluted with 100 mM glycine-HCl, pH 2.7. After neutralization by addition of ~1/50 volume of 1 M Tris-HCl, pH 8.0, the pooled protein fractions were either dialyzed overnight in 20 mM sodium citrate, 120 mM NaCl, pH 6.0, or run over a 5 ml HiTrap<sup>®</sup> Desalting column (Amersham Biosciences<sup>™</sup> Corporation) that was pre-equilibrated with 20 mM sodium citrate, 120 mM NaCl, pH 6.0. The flow-through from the desalting column was collected and fractions with OD<sub>280</sub> > 0.1 were pooled and concentrated to ~0.5-1.0 mg/ml using 2 ml Vivaspin<sup>®</sup> concentrators (50,000 dalton MWCO) (Vivascience<sup>®</sup> AG). Dialyzed material was concentrated in the same manner. Samples were then filter sterilized using 0.2 µm Millex<sup>®</sup>-GV microfilters (Millipore<sup>®</sup> Corporation). The concentrations of the purified antibodies were determined by UV spectroscopy by measuring the absorbance at 280 nm (1 mg/ml = 1.4 A<sub>280</sub>).

#### ***SDS-PAGE:***

Five µg samples of purified antibodies were run under reducing or non-reducing conditions, as described in Example 5.

#### ***Competitive Binding Assays:***

As described in Example 6, NS0 transfectants expressing recombinant, GPI-linked human or rhesus FcRn on the surface were maintained in mycophenolic acid (MPA) selection medium (DMEM, 10% FBS, 1x HT Media Supplement Hybri-Max<sup>®</sup> (Sigma<sup>®</sup>), 250 µg/ml xanthine (Sigma<sup>®</sup>), 1 µg/ml mycophenolic acid (Life Technologies<sup>®</sup>), and 2 mM L-glutamine) or 2x MPA selection medium.

A dilution series of each purified Hu1D10-IgG3 antibody was competed against human IgG (Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, MO) that had been labeled with biotin (Pierce Biotechnology, Inc., Rockford, IL). Antibodies were tested for binding to both human FcRn on cell line NS0 HuFcRn (memb), clone 7-3, and to rhesus FcRn on cell line NS0 RhFcRn, clone R-3. Approximately 2 x 10<sup>5</sup> cells/test were washed once in FBB, pH 8.0,



and once in FBB, pH 6.0, then resuspended in 120  $\mu$ l of pre-mixed biotinylated human IgG antibody (8.3  $\mu$ g/ml) and Hu1D10-IgG3 competitor antibody (twofold serial dilutions from 625  $\mu$ g/ml to 0.305  $\mu$ g/ml) in FBB, pH 6.0. The cells were incubated with the antibody mixture for 1 hour on ice, washed twice in FBB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in 25  $\mu$ l of streptavidin-RPE conjugate (BioSource International) diluted to 2.5  $\mu$ g/ml in FBB, pH 6.0. After incubation for 30 minutes on ice in the dark, the cells were washed twice in FBB, pH 6.0, and resuspended in 1% formaldehyde. Samples were analyzed for antibody binding to FcRn by FACS<sup>TM</sup> using a FACSCalibur flow cytometer (BD<sup>®</sup> Biosciences).

A dilution series of each purified Hu1D10-IgG4 antibody was competed against human IgG (Sigma-Aldrich) that had been labeled with biotin (Pierce Biotechnology, Inc.). The IgG4 antibodies were tested for binding to both human FcRn on cell line NS0 HuFcRn (memb), clone 7-3, and to rhesus FcRn on cell line NS0 RhFcRn, clone R-3, as described above for the IgG3 antibodies.

***pH-Dependent Binding and Release Assay:***

Purified Hu1D10-IgG3 and Hu1D10-IgG4 mutant antibodies were compared to the respective wild-type antibodies for binding to human or rhesus FcRn and then released at various pH values in single-point binding and release assays using cell lines NS0 HuFcRn (memb), clone 7-3, and NS0 RhFcRn, clone R-3, respectively, as described in Example 7. To ensure that both subtypes, IgG3 and IgG4, were labeled equivalently, 25  $\mu$ l of goat F(ab')<sub>2</sub> anti-human kappa FITC-conjugated antibody (Southern Biotechnology Associates, Inc.) diluted to 1.25  $\mu$ g/ml in FBB of the appropriate pH was used as the detecting reagent.

***Results:***

Amino acid substitutions were generated at position 428 of the human  $\gamma$ 3 heavy chain and positions 250 and 428 of the human  $\gamma$ 4 heavy chain (numbered according to the EU index of Kabat et al., op. cit.). These two positions were chosen based on the identification of mutations at these positions in the human  $\gamma$ 2M3 heavy chain that resulted in increased binding to FcRn. The M428L mutant was evaluated in the human  $\gamma$ 3 heavy chain. Both the M428L mutant and the T250Q/M428L mutant were evaluated in the human  $\gamma$ 4 heavy chain.

The IgG3 and IgG4 Fc mutants were expressed as anti-HLA-DR  $\beta$  chain allele antibodies, comprising the light and heavy chain variable regions of Hu1D10 (Kostelny et al. (2001), op. cit.), the light chain constant region of human kappa (Hieter et al. (1980), op. cit.), and the heavy chain constant regions of human IgG3 (Huck et al., op. cit.) and IgG4

(Ellison et al, op. cit.), respectively. As described above, the appropriate wild-type or mutant heavy chain expression vector was transiently co-transfected with the appropriate light chain expression vector into 293-H cells for expression of Hu1D10 monoclonal antibodies. ELISA analysis of culture supernatants harvested 5-7 days after transient transfection showed that antibody expression levels were typically 5-25 µg/ml in 25 ml of supernatant. The Hu1D10-IgG3 and Hu1D10-IgG4 antibodies were purified by affinity chromatography using protein G and protein A, respectively, for a final yield of approximately 100-500 µg. Stable expression of Hu1D10 antibodies in Sp2/0 cells typically resulted in expression levels of 30-100 µg/ml as determined by ELISA. Yields of approximately 50-80% of the antibody present in culture supernatants were obtained by small-scale protein G or protein A affinity chromatography.

Purified antibodies were characterized by SDS polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) under non-reducing and reducing conditions. SDS-PAGE analysis under non-reducing conditions indicated that the purified antibodies had a molecular weight of about 150-170kD (data not shown); analysis under reducing conditions indicated that the purified antibodies were comprised of a heavy chain with a molecular weight of about 50-60 kD and a light chain with a molecular weight of about 25 kD (data not shown). SDS-PAGE analysis of antibodies purified from stable Sp2/0 transfectants gave results similar to those observed with antibodies purified from transient 293-H transfections.

The relative binding of wild-type Hu1D10-IgG3 and Hu1D10-IgG4 antibodies and their various mutants to FcRn was determined using a transfected NS0 cell line stably expressing human FcRn on its surface. As described above, purified antibodies were tested for FcRn binding in competitive binding assays. Increasing concentrations of unlabeled competitor antibodies were incubated with cells in the presence of a sub-saturating concentration of biotinylated human IgG antibody (Sigma-Aldrich) in FBB, pH 6.0.

The binding of Hu1D10-IgG3 wild-type and the M428L mutant to human FcRn were tested in competitive binding experiments. As summarized in Table 11, the IC<sub>50</sub> for the wild-type Hu1D10-IgG3 antibody is ~15 µg/ml, whereas the IC<sub>50</sub> for the M428L single mutant is ~2 µg/ml. The binding of Hu1D10-IgG4 and its mutants to human FcRn were also tested in competitive binding experiments. As summarized in Table 12, the IC<sub>50</sub> for the wild-type Hu1D10-IgG4 antibody is ~76 µg/ml, whereas the IC<sub>50</sub> for the M428L single mutant is ~5 µg/ml, and the IC<sub>50</sub> for the T250Q/M428L double mutant is ~1 µg/ml.

The binding of Hu1D10-IgG3 wild-type and the M428L mutant to rhesus FcRn were tested in competitive binding experiments. As summarized in Table 13, the IC<sub>50</sub> for the

wild-type Hu1D10-IgG3 antibody is ~14 µg/ml, whereas the IC50 for the M428L single mutant is ~3 µg/ml. The binding of Hu1D10-IgG4 and its mutants to rhesus FcRn were also tested in competitive binding experiments. As summarized in Table 14, the IC50 for the wild-type Hu1D10-IgG4 antibody is ~98 µg/ml, whereas the IC50 for the M428L single mutant is ~7 µg/ml, and the IC50 for the T250Q/M428L double mutant is ~1 µg/ml.

The binding of IgG to FcRn is known to be pH-dependent: IgG binds strongly to FcRn at pH 6.0 but weakly at pH 8.0. In order to engineer mutant antibodies with longer serum half-lives, it is desirable to increase binding to FcRn at pH 6.0, while retaining pH-dependent release from FcRn at pH 8.0. To confirm that binding was pH-dependent, the antibodies were tested for binding to a transfected NS0 cell line stably expressing human FcRn and then released at pH values ranging from pH 6.0 to pH 8.0. As described above, the cells were incubated with a sub-saturating concentration of antibody in FBB, pH 6.0, washed with FBB, pH 6.0, 6.5, 7.0, 7.5, or 8.0, and binding was analyzed by FACST<sup>TM</sup>. As shown in Figure 21A, the results indicated that the modified Hu1D10-IgG3 antibody with the M428L mutation showed strong binding to human FcRn at pH 6.0, with diminishing binding as the pH values increased to pH 8.0. As shown in Figure 21B, the results indicated that the modified Hu1D10-IgG4 antibodies with the M428L or T250Q/M428L mutations both showed strong binding to human FcRn at pH 6.0, with diminishing binding as the pH values increased to pH 8.0. These results indicated that the binding of the IgG3 and IgG4 antibodies to human FcRn was pH-dependent.

Similarly, the antibodies were tested for binding to a transfected NS0 cell line stably expressing rhesus FcRn and then released at pH values ranging from pH 6.0 to pH 8.0. As shown in Figure 21C, the results indicated that the modified Hu1D10-IgG3 antibody with the M428L mutation showed strong binding to rhesus FcRn at pH 6.0, with diminishing binding as the pH values increased to pH 8.0. As shown in Figure 21D, the results indicated that the modified Hu1D10-IgG4 antibodies with the M428L or T250Q/M428L mutations showed strong binding to rhesus FcRn at pH 6.0, with diminishing binding as the pH values increased to pH 8.0. These results indicated that the binding of the antibodies to rhesus FcRn was also pH-dependent.

TABLE 11

Name <sup>a</sup> (IgG3)	n <sup>b</sup>	IC50 ( $\mu$ g/ml) <sup>c</sup>	Relative Binding <sup>d</sup>
Wild-type	3	14.5 $\pm$ 3.6	1.0
M428L	3	2.29 $\pm$ 0.39	6.3

<sup>a</sup> For each mutant, the first letter indicates the wild-type amino acid, the number indicates the position according to the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and the second letter indicates the mutant amino acid.

<sup>b</sup> n indicates the number of independent assays.

<sup>c</sup> IC50 values ( $\pm$  S.D.) are expressed in  $\mu$ g/ml (based on final competitor concentrations) and were calculated from competitive binding assays versus biotinylated human IgG (Sigma-Aldrich) in FBB, pH 6.0, as described in Example 11.

<sup>d</sup> Relative binding to human FcRn was calculated as the ratio of the IC50 value of the wild-type Hu1D10-IgG3 to that of the mutant.

TABLE 12

Name <sup>a</sup> (IgG4)	n <sup>b</sup>	IC50 ( $\mu$ g/ml) <sup>c</sup>	Relative Binding <sup>d</sup>
Wild-type	3	76.1 $\pm$ 12.7	1.0
M428L	3	5.03 $\pm$ 0.45	15
T250Q/M428L	3	1.07 $\pm$ 0.14	71

<sup>a</sup> For each mutant, the first letter indicates the wild-type amino acid, the number indicates the position according to the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and the second letter indicates the mutant amino acid.

<sup>b</sup> n indicates the number of independent assays.

<sup>c</sup> IC50 values ( $\pm$  S.D.) are expressed in  $\mu$ g/ml (based on final competitor concentrations) and were calculated from competitive binding assays versus biotinylated human IgG (Sigma-Aldrich) in FBB, pH 6.0, as described in Example 11.

<sup>d</sup> Relative binding to human FcRn was calculated as the ratio of the IC50 value of the wild-type Hu1D10-IgG4 to that of each of the mutants.

TABLE 13

Name <sup>a</sup> (IgG3)	n <sup>b</sup>	IC50 ( $\mu$ g/ml) <sup>c</sup>	Relative Binding <sup>d</sup>
Wild-type	3	13.8 $\pm$ 1.0	1.0
M428L	3	3.03 $\pm$ 0.44	4.6

<sup>a</sup> For each mutant, the first letter indicates the wild-type amino acid, the number indicates the position according to the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and the second letter indicates the mutant amino acid.

<sup>b</sup> n indicates the number of independent assays.

<sup>c</sup> IC50 values ( $\pm$  S.D.) are expressed in  $\mu$ g/ml (based on final competitor concentrations) and were calculated from competitive binding assays versus biotinylated human IgG (Sigma-Aldrich) in FBB, pH 6.0, as described in Example 11.

<sup>d</sup> Relative binding to rhesus FcRn was calculated as the ratio of the IC50 value of the wild-type Hu1D10-IgG3 to that of the mutant.

TABLE 14

Name <sup>a</sup> (IgG4)	n <sup>b</sup>	IC50 ( $\mu$ g/ml) <sup>c</sup>	Relative Binding <sup>d</sup>
Wild-type	3	98.4 $\pm$ 15.8	1.0
M428L	3	6.64 $\pm$ 1.05	15
T250Q/M428L	3	1.27 $\pm$ 0.13	77

<sup>a</sup> For each mutant, the first letter indicates the wild-type amino acid, the number indicates the position according to the EU index (Kabat et al., op. cit.), and the second letter indicates the mutant amino acid.

<sup>b</sup> n indicates the number of independent assays.

<sup>c</sup> IC50 values ( $\pm$  S.D.) are expressed in  $\mu$ g/ml (based on final competitor concentrations) and were calculated from competitive binding assays versus biotinylated human IgG (Sigma-Aldrich) in FBB, pH 6.0, as described in Example 11.

<sup>d</sup> Relative binding to rhesus FcRn was calculated as the ratio of the IC50 value of the wild-type Hu1D10-IgG4 to that of each of the mutants.

### Example 12

This example describes application of the *in vitro* and *in vivo* serum half-life assays described in Examples 9 and 10 to mutants of IgG3 and IgG4 antibodies.

The protocols of the "Rhesus Pharmacokinetics Study" as described in Examples 9 and 10 are carried out on mutants of IgG3 and IgG4 to confirm the effect of the mutations on *in vivo* serum half-life and the various pharmacokinetic parameters.

### Example 13

This example describes the design and production of FcRn binding mutants of well-known therapeutic antibodies thereby extending (or decreasing) the serum half-life of each so as to allow improved patient treatment regimens.

#### Daclizumab:

Daclizumab is a humanized anti-CD25 monoclonal antibody that is undergoing clinical development for a number of autoimmune and inflammatory disease indications including asthma, diabetes, uveitis, multiple sclerosis, rheumatoid arthritis and ulcerative colitis. Daclizumab is currently marketed under the trademark Zenapax<sup>®</sup> for transplant indications only.

The amino acid sequences of the light and heavy chain variable regions for daclizumab have been disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 5,530,101, which is hereby incorporated by reference herein.

Daclizumab in its current clinical embodiment is an IgG1 isotype antibody, however, an IgG2M3 isotype version of daclizumab may be produced that exhibits similar therapeutic characteristics.

In order to increase the serum half-life of daclizumab, its constant region amino acid sequence may be modified with any of the FcRn binding mutations described above. For example, the T250Q/M428L mutation may be produced in daclizumab using the methods for vector design and mutagenesis described in Examples 1-4 above. The sequence of T250Q/M428L daclizumab is depicted in Figure 22 (SEQ ID NO: 122).

The increased serum half-life of T250Q/M428L daclizumab may be determined using the *in vitro* binding assay methods described in Examples 5-7, or using the *in vivo* assay methods described in Examples 9-10.

It is expected that T250Q/M428L daclizumab will provide the therapeutic benefits of the unaltered daclizumab with the advantage of decreased frequency and amount of dosage.

The other FcRn binding mutations in daclizumab (IgG1 isotype) constant region sequences, as depicted in Figure 22 (SEQ ID NOs:119-123), may also be produced according to the methods of Examples 1-3 above. It is expected that these mutants will also affect serum half-life of daclizumab as desired based on the effects of these mutations in the OST577 and Hu1D10 antibody examples above.

Similarly, the FcRn binding mutation in an IgG2M3 version of daclizumab constant region sequences, as depicted in Figure 22 (SEQ ID NOs:124-128), may also be produced according to the methods of Examples 1-4 above.

#### **Fontolizumab:**

Fontolizumab is an humanized anti-interferon-gamma (IFN- $\gamma$ ) monoclonal antibody of the IgG1 isotype also known as HuZAR™. Fontolizumab is currently undergoing clinical development as a therapeutic treatment for Crohn's disease. The variable region sequences of fontolizumab are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,329,511 which is hereby incorporated by reference herein. As described above for daclizumab, the serum half-life of fontolizumab may also be altered by mutating its constant region sequences as shown in Figure 23 (SEQ ID NOs:130-134), using the methods described above in Examples 1-4.

#### **Visilizumab:**

Visilizumab is a humanized anti-CD3 monoclonal antibody of the IgG2 isotype, also known as Nuvin®. Visilizumab targets CD3 molecules, which form the antigen-receptor complex on all mature T cells. Visilizumab is currently undergoing clinical development as treatment of steroid refractory ulcerative colitis. As described above for daclizumab, and fontolizumab, the serum half-life of visilizumab may also be altered by mutating its

constant region sequences as shown in Figure 24 (SEQ ID NOs:136-140), using the methods described above in Examples 1-4.

***M200:***

M200 is a chimeric IgG4 antibody directed to the  $\alpha 5\beta 1$  integrin that is currently  
5 being developed as an angiogenesis inhibitor therapy directed to various proliferative disorders. As described above for daclizumab, fontolizumab, and visilizumab the serum half-life of M200 may also be altered by mutating its constant region sequences as shown in Figure 25 (SEQ ID NOs:142-146), using the methods described above in Examples 1-3.

Although the invention has been described with reference to the presently preferred  
10 embodiments, it should be understood that various modifications may be made without departing from the spirit of the invention.

All publications, patents, patent applications, and web sites are herein incorporated  
by reference in their entirety to the same extent as if each individual publication, patent,  
patent application, or web site was specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated  
15 by reference in its entirety.

**WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:**

1. A modified antibody of class IgG wherein at least one amino acid residue from the heavy chain constant region selected from the group consisting of amino acid residues 250, 314, and 428 is different from that present in an unmodified class IgG antibody,  
5 wherein the FcRn binding affinity and/or serum half-life of said modified antibody is altered relative to that of the unmodified antibody.
2. The modified antibody according to Claim 1, wherein said unmodified class IgG antibody is selected from the group consisting of daclizumab, fontolizumab, visilizumab and M200.
- 10 3. An antibody having a constant region substantially identical to that of a naturally occurring class IgG antibody wherein at least one amino acid residue from the heavy chain constant region selected from the group consisting of residues 250, 314, and 428 is different from that present in the naturally occurring class IgG antibody, wherein the FcRn binding affinity and/or serum half-life of said antibody is altered relative to the  
15 naturally occurring antibody.
4. The antibody according to Claim 3 wherein said naturally occurring class IgG antibody is selected from the group consisting of daclizumab, fontolizumab, visilizumab and M200..
5. The antibody according to Claim 3, wherein:  
20 (a) said amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is glutamic acid or glutamine; or  
(b) said amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is phenylalanine or leucine.
6. The antibody according to Claim 3, wherein said amino acid residue 250 from the heavy  
25 chain constant region is glutamine.
7. The antibody according to Claim 3, wherein said amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is leucine.
8. The antibody according to Claim 3, wherein:



(a) said amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is glutamic acid and said amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is phenylalanine;

(b) said amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is glutamine and said amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is phenylalanine; or

(c) said amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is glutamine and said amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is leucine.

- 10 9. A modified therapeutic antibody of class IgG with an *in vivo* elimination half-life at least about 1.3-fold longer than that of the corresponding unmodified class IgG antibody.
10. The modified therapeutic antibody of class IgG of Claim 9, wherein at least one amino acid residue from the heavy chain constant region selected from the group consisting of
- 15 residues 250, 314, and 428 is different from that present in the unmodified antibody.
11. The modified therapeutic antibody of class IgG of Claim 9, wherein the antibody is selected from the group consisting of daclizumab, fontolizumab, visilizumab and M200.
12. The modified therapeutic antibody of class IgG of Claim 9, wherein:

(a) said amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is glutamic acid and amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is phenylalanine;

(b) said amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is glutamine and amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is phenylalanine; or

(c) said amino acid residue 250 from the heavy chain constant region is glutamine and amino acid residue 428 from the heavy chain constant region is leucine.

13. A modified therapeutic antibody of class IgG with an *in vivo* clearance at least about 1.3-fold lower than that of the corresponding unmodified class IgG antibody.
14. The modified therapeutic antibody of class IgG of Claim 13, wherein at least one of amino acid residue from the heavy chain constant region selected from the group  
5 consisting of residues 250, 314, and 428 is different from that present in the unmodified class IgG antibody.
15. The modified therapeutic antibody of class IgG of Claim 13, wherein the antibody is selected from the group consisting of daclizumab, fontolizumab, visilizumab and M200.
16. A modified therapeutic antibody comprising a light chain amino acid sequence of SEQ  
10 ID NO: 118 and a heavy chain amino acid sequence selected from SEQ ID NOs: 119-128.
17. A vector comprising a polynucleotide encoding the light or heavy chain amino acid sequence of Claim 16.
18. A host cell comprising the vector according to Claim 16.
- 15 19. A modified therapeutic antibody comprising a light chain amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 129 and a heavy chain amino acid sequence selected from SEQ ID NOs: 130-134.
20. A vector comprising a polynucleotide encoding the light or heavy chain amino acid sequence of Claim 19.
- 20 21. A host cell comprising the vector according to Claim 19.
22. A modified therapeutic antibody comprising a light chain amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 135 and a heavy chain amino acid sequence selected from SEQ ID NOs: 136-140.
23. A vector comprising a polynucleotide encoding the light or heavy chain amino acid  
25 sequence of Claim 22.
24. A host cell comprising the vector according to Claim 22.

25. A modified therapeutic antibody comprising a light chain amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 141 and a heavy chain amino acid sequence selected from SEQ ID NOs: 142-146.
26. A vector comprising a polynucleotide encoding the light or heavy chain amino acid  
5 sequence of Claim 25.
27. A host cell comprising the vector according to Claim 25.

2/58

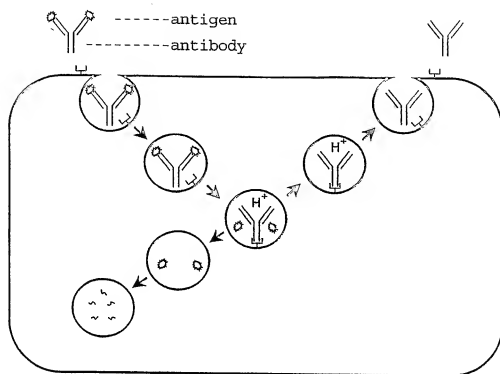
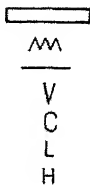
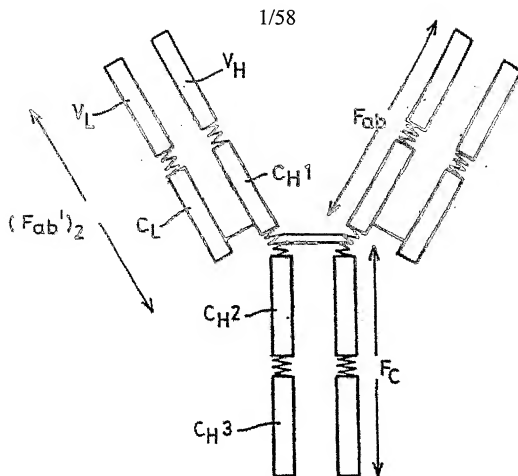


FIG. 2



## domains

**inter-domain sections**

**interchain disulphide bonds**

**variable**

**constant**

**light chain**

**heavy chain**

**FIG. 1**

3/58

FIG. 3A Amino Acid Sequences of OST577-IgG2M3 and OST577-IgG1

OST577 - VH	QVQLVESGGGVVQPGSRSLRLSCLASGFTFSRVMGHNTVQAPQKLELVNDAVISTDGSNKTADSVKGRFTISDDNSKNTLFQWISLEAAADTVYFCADQQLTFSGQSFGHTWGQTLTVTSS
IgG2M3 - CH	ASTKGPSVFPALACSHSTSESTAALGCLVQDYFPPEVTVSNRSGALASGVNTPPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVFSSNFGVYVTCNVDKQPSNTKVDKTVKCKVCQPCP APPAALASVTLFPFPKFCYGLMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHSDPEVQFMVDOVEVBAKTPQREQPNSTFRVSVLTVVHQDNLKMKETKCKVSHKGLPAPTEKTSNK QQPREPQVTLFPSPKEDNTKQVSLTCLVKGFTFSDIAVENEENQPEPNTKNTTPMLDSGGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRMQQGHVFSQSVREDALEHHTYTGSLSPSK
IgG1 - CH	ASTKGPSVFPALASSKNTSGTAAALGCLVQDYFPPEVTVSNRSGALASGVNTPPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVFSSSLGVYVTCNVDKQPSNTKVDKTVKCKVCNTKTCFPCP APPELLGPSVTLFPFPKFCYGLMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHSDPEVQFMVDOVEVBAKTPQREQPNSTFRVSVLTVVHQDNLKMKETKCKVSHKGLPAPTEKTSNK QQPREPQVTLFPSPKEDNTKQVSLTCLVKGFTFSDIAVENEENQPEPNTKNTTPMLDSGGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRMQQGHVFSQSVREDALEHHTYTGSLSPSK
OST577 - VL	SYLVLTQPEPVSVAPQCTAALTCGGDNIGSKSVNMFQKQQAFLVAVYTDNHEPSSGISERFSGNSGNTALTISRYEAGDEADTYCQWDSSEDAVYFGQTKLTVLG
LAH2A2 - CL	QPKAAPSITLFPFSEELQNTGLVCLISDFTPGAVTVAKADSPVAGVETTPPSKQSNKTAASSTLSLTPQKWSHNSISQVTHEGSTVKNYAPTECS

4/58

FIG. 3B Amino Acid Sequences of OST577-IgG2M3 and Its Mutants

```

ASTKQSEVPLACGSESTETALGCLVETFEFTVSSNGSLTSQVHTFPAVLQSSGLVLSLSTVTVFSSNPGTQITTCVGHPEPSTKEDKDY
-----
L328G
L328A
L328C
L328D
L328E
L328F
L328G
L328H
L328I
L328J
L328K
L328L
L328M
L328N
L328O
L328P
L328Q
L328R
L328S
L328T
L328U
L328V
L328W
L328X
L328Y
L328Z
L314G
L314A
L314B
L314C
L314D
L314E
L314F
L314G
L314H
L314I
L314J
L314K
L314L
L314M
L314N
L314O
L314P
L314Q
L314R
L314S
L314T
L314U
L314V
L314W
L314X
L314Y
L314Z
M426A
M426B
M426C
M426D
M426E
M426F
M426G
M426H
M426I
M426J
M426K
M426L
M426M
M426N
M426O
M426P
M426Q
M426R
M426S
M426T
M426U
M426V
M426W
M426X
M426Y
M426Z

```

5/58

FIG. 3B Amino Acid Sequences of OST577-IgG2M3 and Its Mutants

M428H	-----
M428I	-----
M428K	-----
M428L	-----
M428N	-----
M428P	-----
M428Q	-----
M428R	-----
M428S	-----
M428T	-----
M428V	-----
M428W	-----
M428Y	-----
T250E/M428F	-----
T250G/M428F	-----
T250Q/M428L	-----
IG2M3	ERNCCVCCFFCP
T250A	-----
T250C	-----
T250D	-----
T250E	-----
T250F	-----
T250G	-----
T250H	-----
T250I	-----
T250K	-----
T250L	-----
T250M	-----
T250N	-----
T250P	-----
T250Q	-----
T250R	-----
T250S	-----
T250V	-----
T250W	-----
T250Y	-----
L314A	-----
L314C	-----
L314D	-----
L314E	-----
L314F	-----
L314G	-----
L314H	-----
L314I	-----
L314K	-----



6/58

FIG. 3B Amino Acid Sequences of OST577-IgG2M3 and Its Mutants

L314N	-----
L314P	-----
L314Q	-----
L314R	-----
L314S	-----
L314T	-----
L314V	-----
L314W	-----
L314Y	-----
M428A	-----
M428C	-----
M428D	-----
M428E	-----
M428F	-----
M428G	-----
M428H	-----
M428I	-----
M428K	-----
M428L	-----
M428N	-----
M428P	-----
M428Q	-----
M428R	-----
M428S	-----
M428T	-----
M428V	-----
M428W	-----
M428Y	-----
T230E/M428F	-----
T230Q/M428F	-----
T230Q/M428L	-----
I522M3	APPRAAPSVTLFFPPFQDTLMSIKETCTVTVUNSHDEPQFMVYQDQVHRANKPSEQFNSTFRVSVLVTVHQDLNKKTKCNVSNGLPAFIEKTSKTK
T230A	-----
T230C	-----
T230D	-----
T230E	-----
T230F	-----
T230G	-----
T230H	-----
T230I	-----
T230J	-----
T230K	-----
T230M	-----
T230N	-----

7/58

FIG. 3B Amino Acid Sequences of OST577-IgG2M3 and Its Mutants

T150P	P
T150Q	Q
T150R	R
T150S	S
T150V	V
T150W	W
T150Y	Y
L3141	
L3141A	A
L3141C	C
L3141D	D
L3141E	E
L3141F	F
L3141G	G
L3141H	H
L3141I	I
L3141K	K
L3141M	M
L3141N	N
L3141P	P
L3141Q	Q
L3141R	R
L3141S	S
L3141T	T
L3141V	V
L3141W	W
L3141Y	Y
M428A	
M428C	C
M428D	D
M428E	E
M428F	F
M428G	G
M428H	H
M428I	I
M428K	K
M428L	L
M428N	N
M428P	P
M428Q	Q
M428R	R
M428S	S
M428T	T
M428V	V
M428W	W
M428Y	Y

8/58

FIG. 3B Amino Acid Sequences of OST577-IgG2M3 and Its Mutants

T250E/M28F	-----E-----
T250Q/M28F	-----Q-----
T250Q/M28L	-----L-----
T250L	-----L-----
T250A	-----A-----
T250C	-----C-----
T250D	-----D-----
T250E	-----E-----
T250F	-----F-----
T250G	-----G-----
T250H	-----H-----
T250I	-----I-----
T250K	-----K-----
T250L	-----L-----
T250M	-----M-----
T250N	-----N-----
T250P	-----P-----
T250Q	-----Q-----
T250R	-----R-----
T250S	-----S-----
T250V	-----V-----
T250W	-----W-----
T250Y	-----Y-----
L314A	-----A-----
L314C	-----C-----
L314D	-----D-----
L314E	-----E-----
L314F	-----F-----
L314G	-----G-----
L314H	-----H-----
L314I	-----I-----
L314K	-----K-----
L314N	-----N-----
L314P	-----P-----
L314Q	-----Q-----
L314R	-----R-----
L314S	-----S-----
L314T	-----T-----
L314V	-----V-----
L314W	-----W-----
L314Y	-----Y-----
M28A	-----A-----
M28C	-----C-----
M28D	-----D-----

9/58

FIG. 3B Amino Acid Sequences of OST577-IgC2M3 and Its Mutants

M428E	-----F-----
M428F	-----F-----
M428G	-----G-----
M428H	-----H-----
M428I	-----I-----
M428K	-----K-----
M428L	-----L-----
M428M	-----M-----
M428N	-----N-----
M428P	-----P-----
M428Q	-----Q-----
M428R	-----R-----
M428S	-----S-----
M428T	-----T-----
M428V	-----V-----
M428W	-----W-----
M428Y	-----Y-----
T350E/M428F	-----F-----
T350Q/M428F	-----F-----
T350Q/M428L	-----L-----

10/58

FIG. 3C Amino Acid Sequences of OST577-IgG1 and Its Mutants

IgG1	ASTKGRSVFLAPASKSTSGGTDAAGCLVDYFFPVTVNSGALTFSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLSLGSLVTVYFSSSLGCTVTLQVWRHFSFVNDKDY
T250D	-----
T250E	-----
T250Q	-----
M428F	-----
M428L	-----
T250E/M428F	-----
T250Q/M428L	-----
IgG1	EPKSCDKHTCPPCP
T250D	-----
T250E	-----
T250Q	-----
M428F	-----
M428L	-----
T250E/M428F	-----
T250Q/M428L	-----
IgG1	APFELLAGPSVLPFPKSKHTLMISKRTFETCVVVDVSHEDPEVKEVNTVDGVEVRAKTPRDEQNSTRVSVLTVLHQDLNGLTKYIKRVNKGALPAPIENTIRK
T250D	-----
T250E	-----
T250Q	-----
M428F	-----
M428L	-----
T250E/M428F	-----
T250Q/M428L	-----
IgG1	GQPRSPQVTLPPSSDELTKQVSLCLVGFYFSDIAVENESGQPEKNTKTPVLDGDSFFLYSKLTVDKRMQQQWTFSCVWRDLKHTQKGLSPQK
T250D	-----
T250E	-----
T250Q	-----
M428F	-----
M428L	-----
T250E/M428F	-----
T250Q/M428L	-----

11/58

FIG. 3D Amino Acid Sequences of Hu1D10-IgG2M3 and Hu1D10-IgG1

Hu1D10 - VH	QVQLQESGPGLVKPSSETLSLTCTVSGFSLNTNGVHWVRQSPKRLSEWLGWMSGDSSTERRNAPISRLTIKSTSRNQSLKINSLSLTAQATVATVYQDRHYAMDVQQGTLTVTSS
IgG2M3 - CH	ASTVGRSTFFFLAPCSRSTSESTALAGCLVKDYFPEPTVSRNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSSLYSLSSVYTPVPSNRFTQTYTCNWVGHKPSVKDKYVERKCCPCPCP APFAAASFVLFPPKFDJLMSRTPEVTCVVDVSHDEPVEVQRMYVDGVVRNAKTPREDEQFNSTFRVSVLYTVHQDMLNCKEYKCNKNSHGLPAPIKTIENIK GQPREPQVYTLPPSRDELTKNQVSLTCLVKGTIPSDIAVMESNQPFENNTKTPPMLSDGSFFLYSLYVDKSRHQGNVFSCSVREALLRHRTIQGLSLSPK
IgG1 - CH	ASTVGRSTFFFLAPSSKTSQGTALAGCLVKDYFPEPTVSRNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSSLYSLSSVYTPVPSLSLTQTYTCNWVGHKPSVKDKYVERKCCPKPCP APELGGPSVLYLFPFKPKYTLMTSRTPETVTCVVDVSHDEPVEVQRMYVDGVVRNAKTPREDEQFNSTFRVSVLYTVHQDMLNCKEYKCNKNSHGLPAPIKTIENIK GQPREPQVYTLPPSRDELTKNQVSLTCLVKGTIPSDIAVMESNQPFENNTKTPPMLSDGSFFLYSLYVDKSRHQGNVFSCSVREALLRHRTIQGLSLSPK
Hu1D10 - VL	DIQMTQSPSSLSASVMDVRVITTCRASENIHSTLANVQKQCKGAPRLVSRNAKTLAQSTPSRFSQSGSKQFTLIHISLQPEDNTTYCQHHGISYTFQQTITLTK
KAPPA - CL	KTVAAPSVTIFPPSDEQLASGTASVYVCLANFTYPRRNVCVKYDNALQSGHCSQVTEQSDNSTYLSLSTLTLSKADYKHKYACEVTHQGLSSPVTNSPFRGEC

12/58

FIG. 3E Amino Acid Sequences of Hu1D10-IgG2M3 and Its Mutants

IG2M3	ASTKGSVTELAGQSLTSEETRALGCLVNDYTPPYTVSNNSGALTSGYHIFPAVLQSSLYLSLSVTVVSSNFGTQTTTCNVHKGENTKDKY
M428L	-----
T250Q/M428L	-----
IG2M3	ERKCCVECPFP
M428L	-----
T250Q/M428L	-----
IG2M3	APPAAPSVTLPPKPKLTLMLSKTPEPTCTGVDSHPDQFPMTVDGVEVRNATKPREQNSTFVSVLVVHQDWLAKKCKVSHKLPAPIKTIENIK
M428L	-----Q-----
T250Q/M428L	-----
IG2M3	GPPEPQVTLPPREKNTKQVSLCLVKGFTFSDIANVESHQPENNYKITYPMLDSGFFLYSKLVDKSRQQCNVFQCTWHEALHNTQKLSLSPK
M428L	-----
T250Q/M428L	-----

13/58

FIG. 3F Amino Acid Sequences of Hu1D10-IgG1 and Its Mutants

IgG1	ASTKGFVFPFLAASKSTSGTALGCLVDTFFPEPTVSNHGALTSQVHTFPAVLQSSCLXSLSSPTVPSSSLGTQYTIQNVHKKPSHTKVDKY	
M428L	-----	
T250Q/M428L	-----	
IgG1	EPKSCDKHTCPCP	
M428L	-----	
T250Q/M428L	-----	
IgG1	APSLGGSVELFPFATKDTLAI SKTPEYTCVVVDVSHPDPEYKFNMTVDGVENRAKTRFEDQYNSTYGVSVLTILQDMLKDEIKCNVSKALPAPIETKISGAL	T250Q/M428L
M428L	-----	
	-----Q-----	
IgG1	QQPFEPQVTLPPSDELTFRQVSLTCLVKGTFPSDIAVHESNQCPENIKTTPVLDSDGSFFLYSKIVDKSRWQQGVFSCVNHAEADHHTYQNSLSLPFK	
M428L	-----L-----	
	-----L-----	



FIG. 3G Amino Acid Sequences of Hu1D10-IgG3 and Hu1D10-IgG4

Hu1D10-VH	QVQLAESGPGLVKPSSETLTCTVSGFSITNYGVHVRQSPKGLRWIGYKNGSGSTENIAFISHLTISKTSKQVSLKNSLTAATVATVYCAEDRNDYMQQTLVTSS
IgG3 -CH	ASTKQGSVFFLAFCSEKTSGGTHALGCLVNDYFPEPTVYGNISGALTSQVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSVVTVFSSSLGTQYTCNWHKQSNHTKVDKEY ELATPLGDTHTICPACTPEESKCTPPFCPCPEPKSCDTPFCPCPCP APPELLGGPSVTLFPPKPKDTLTMSRTEPVTCVVDVSHDEPEVQPKWYDGVGVHNAKTKLREEQNSSTFRVSVLVTLQDQMLNGKETCKVSKALPAFIEKTIISAK GQPREPQVYTLPPSSEEMTKQVSLTCLVKNQFYSDIAVWESNGQPENNYNTPPMULSDGSSTFLYISKLTVDKSRMQQNI FSCSYHEALHRYTQKLSLSLIGK
IgG4 -CH	ASTKQGSVFFLAFCSEKTSSTHIALGCLVNDYFPEPTVYGNISGALTSQVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSVVTVFSSSLGTQYTCNVDHKSNHTKVKVESITGPPCPSCP APSEFGGSPVTLFPPKPKDTLTMSRTEPVTCVVDVSGDEPEVQPKWYDGVGVHNAKTKLREEQNSSTFRVSVLVTLQDQMLNGKETCKVSKALPAFIEKTIISAK GQPREPQVYTLPPSSEEMTKQVSLTCLVKNQFYSDIAVWESNGQPENNYNTPPMULSDGSSTFLYISKLTVDKSRMQQNI FSCSYHEALHRYTQKLSLSLIGK
Hu1D10-VL	DICMTQSPSSLSASVGERVITTCRASENIYSYLAVYQKPKAKPLVLSNAKTLABGVPSRPSGSGSGKQFTLTISSLQPEDFATVYCCGHYKNSYEPFQQTGLEIK
KAPPA-CL	FTVAAPSIVTIFPPSDGKSGTASIVCLLANNFYREAKYQWYKDNALQSGNSQESYVERQDQSKDSTVSLSTLTLSKADYKHKYACVETHQGLSSPVTKSFNRGEC

15/58

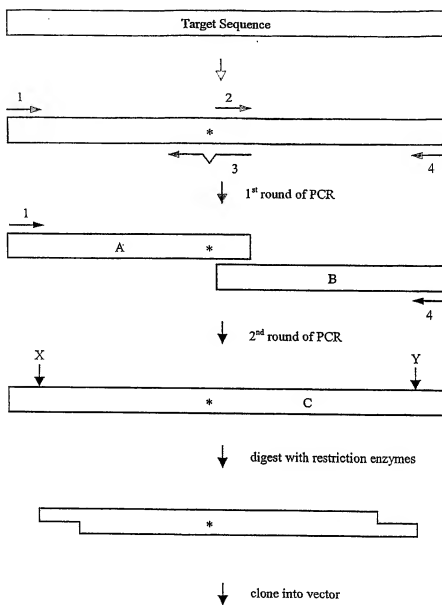
FIG. 3H Amino Acid Sequences of Hu1D10-IgG3 and Its Mutant

IgG3	ASTKQBSVFLAPCSHSISGGTRALGCLVKDYFPEPVVSNMGSALTISOVHTFPAVLQSGDSYSLSSVTVFSSSLGTQITTCNVHGHGNTKCDRV
M428L	-----
IgG3	ELKTFELGDIHTCTPCRP
M428L	-----
IgG3	EPKSCDTPPPCPCRP
M428L	-----
IgG3	EPKSCDTPPPCPCRP
M428L	-----
IgG3	EPKSCDTPPPCPCRP
M428L	-----
IgG3	APELLGSPSVLFPFKPKNDLINSRTPEVTCVVDVSHEDPEVQFNKYDGVENVNAKTKLRBQVNSTFVAVSVLYLHQDLAKGKTCVGNHAPAPFIRCTISKAK
M428L	-----
IgG3	GQPRFQVTLFSPREHTKQVSLCLVKGIFYPSDIAVEMESNQPEINTNTTTPMLDSQSPFLYSKLYVDKRWQQGNTSCVWELLINRYTKQLSLSPK
M428L	-----

FIG. 3I Amino Acid Sequences of Hu1D10-IgG4 and Its Mutants

IgG4	ASTKGPSVFELAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVNDVFPETVYNNISGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSISVVTPSSGLQIKTTTCVNHKPSNKKDKKV
M428L	-----
T250Q/M428L	-----
IgG4	ESKIGPFCPSCP
M428L	-----
T250Q/M428L	-----
IgG4	ASEFLGSPSVFLPPKPKPDILNISRTPEVTCVVVDVSDQEPDVEQFNWYVDGVEVRNARKTPREEQFNSTYRVSVLTVLDQNLGNSTCKCNKNGKLPSSIEINTISGLK
M428L	-----
T250Q/M428L	-----Q-----
IgG4	GQPREPQVITLPPSQEEMTQNVSLTCLVGFPSDIAVEHESNGQPENNYKTPPVLDQSGSFPLYSLTVDKSRWQGENVFSCDVHHEALHNHYTQKSLSLGLK
M428L	-----
T250Q/M428L	-----

17/58



\* = primer mismatches

FIG. 4

18/58

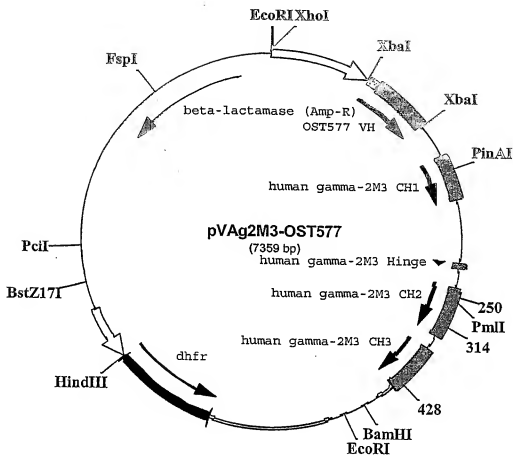


FIG. 5A

19/58

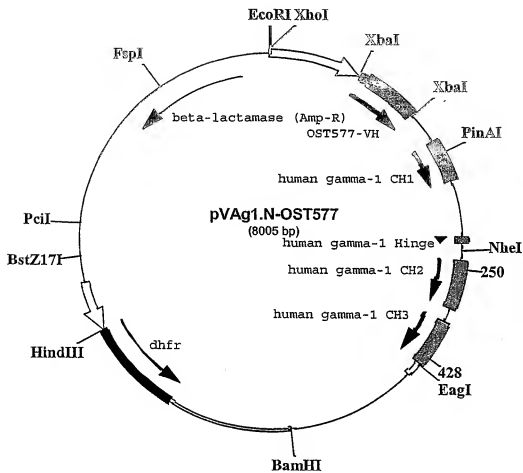


FIG. 5B

20/58

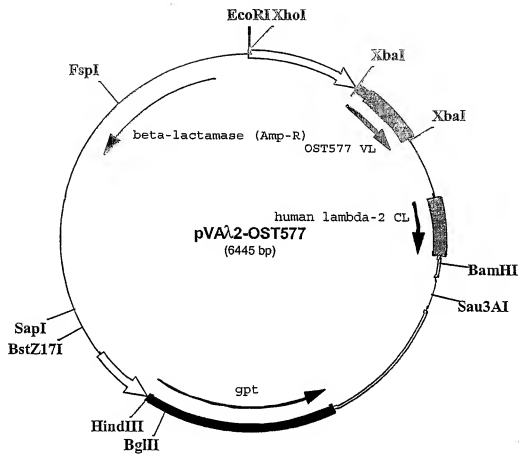


FIG. 6

21/58

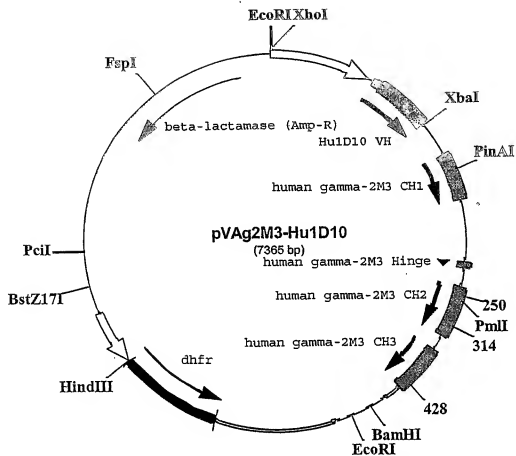


FIG. 7A



22/58

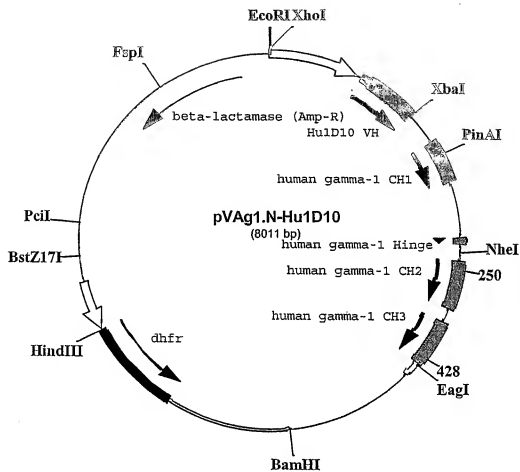


FIG. 7B

23/58

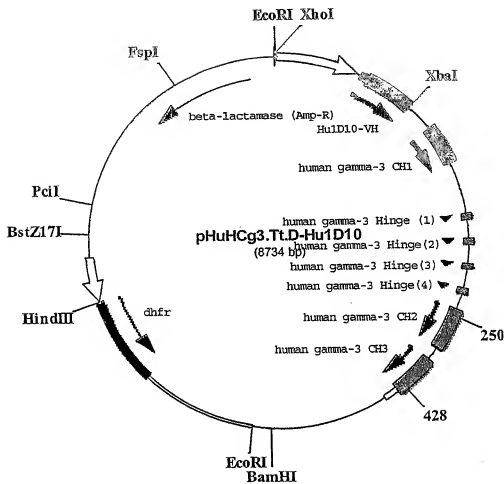


FIG. 7C

24/58

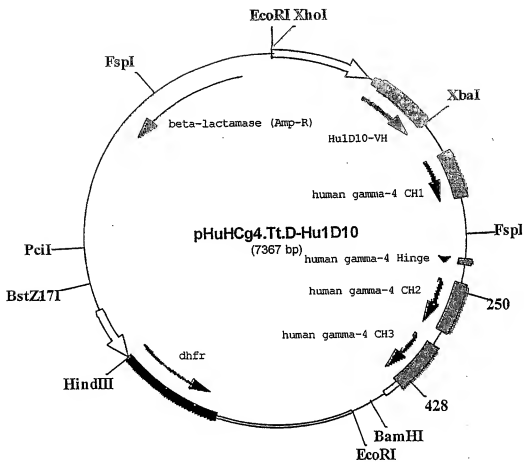


FIG. 7D

25/58

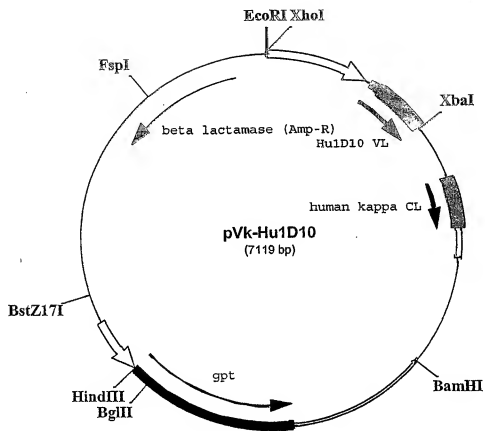


FIG. 8

26/58

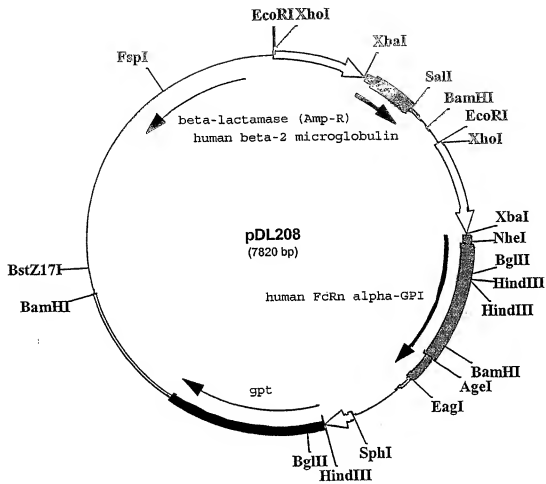


FIG. 9A

27/58

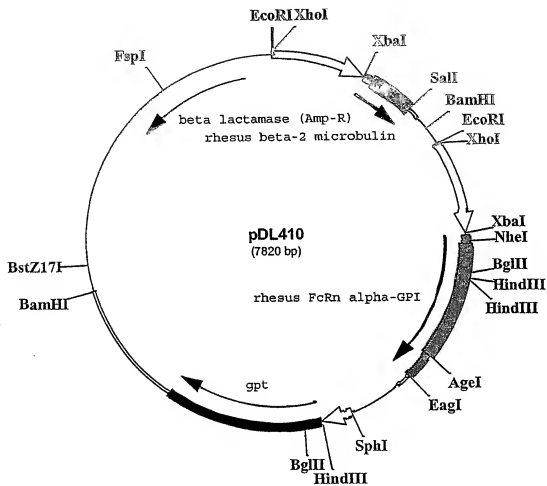


FIG. 9B

28/58

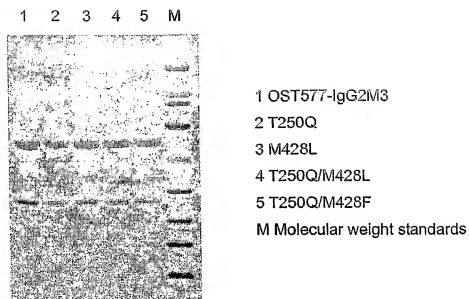


FIG. 10A

29/58

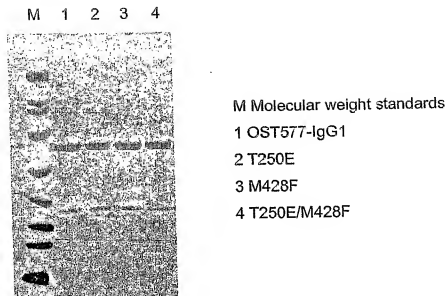


FIG. 10B



30/58

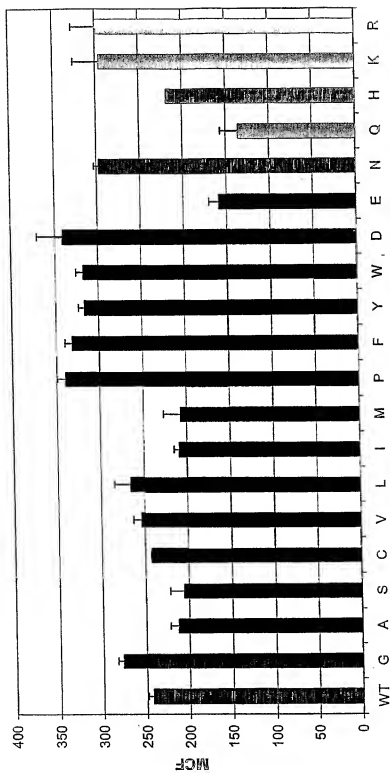


FIG. 11A

31/58

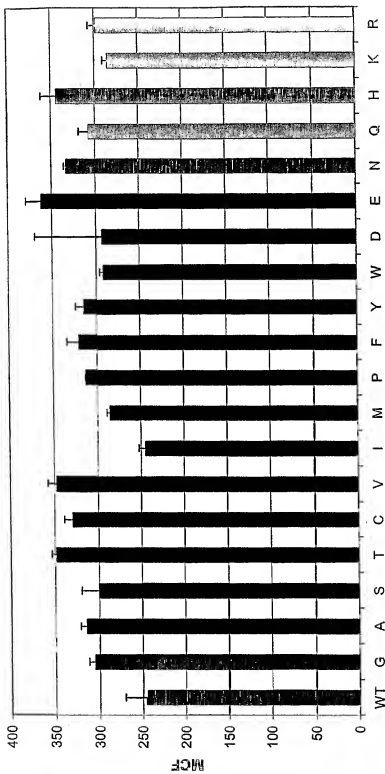


FIG. 11B

32/58

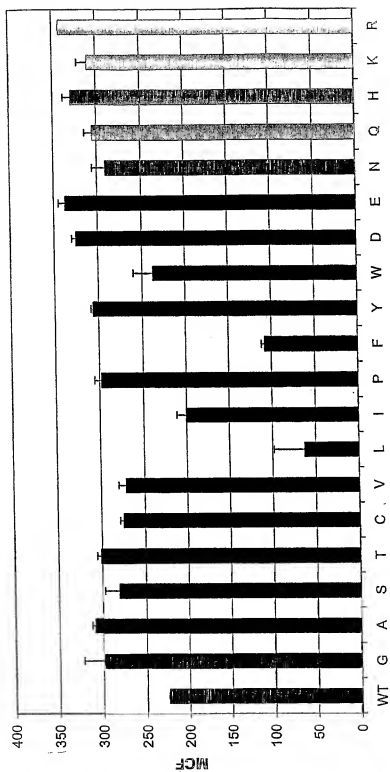


FIG. 11C

33/58

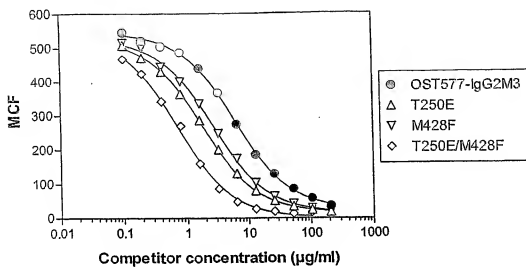


FIG. 12A

34/58

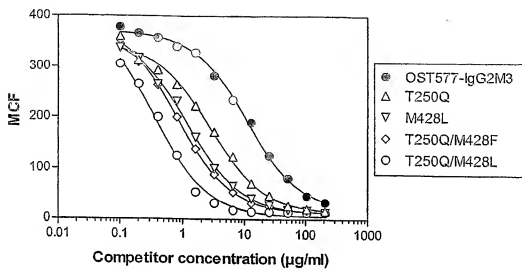


FIG. 12B

35/58

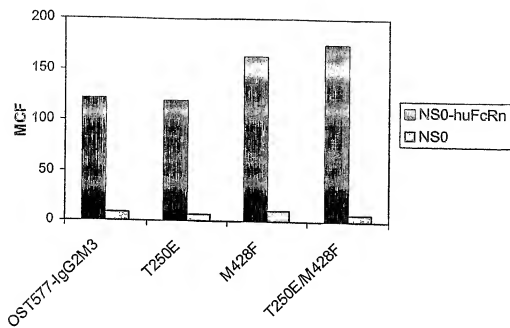


FIG. 13

36/58

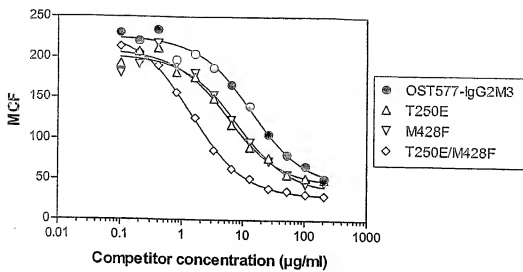


FIG. 14

37/58

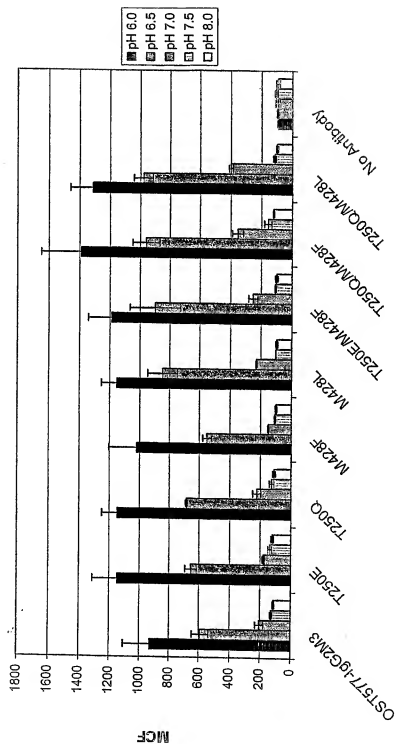


FIG. 15A



38/58

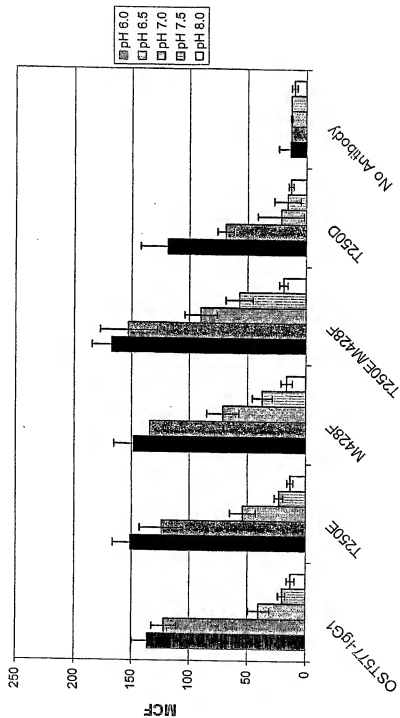


FIG. 15B

39/58

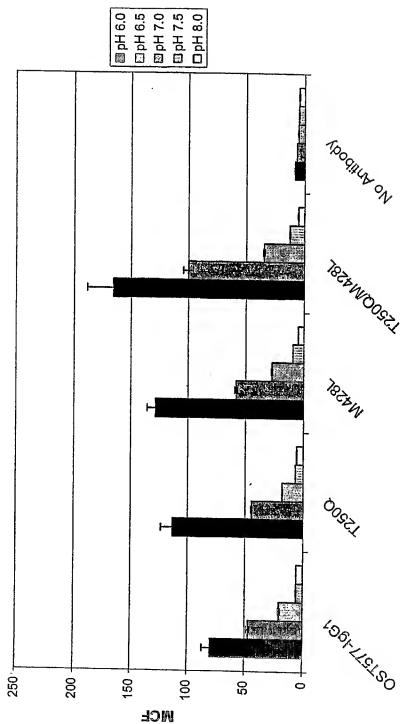


FIG. 15C

40/58

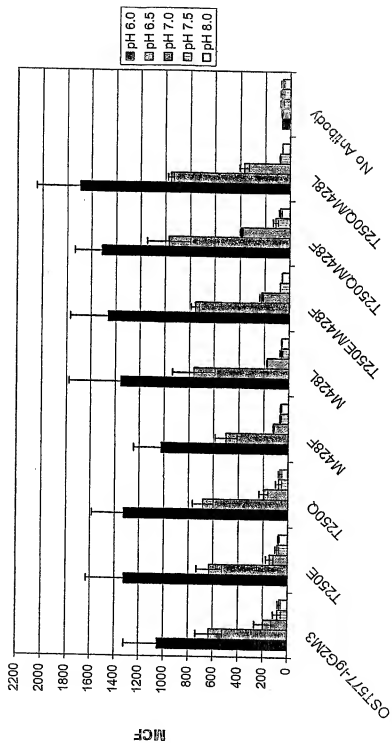


FIG. 15D

41/58

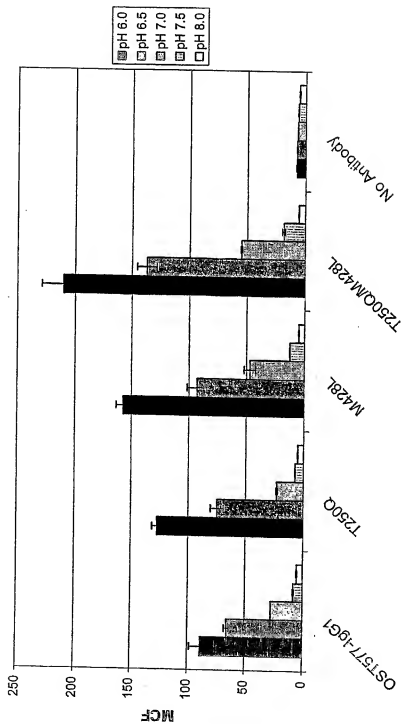


FIG. 15E

42/58

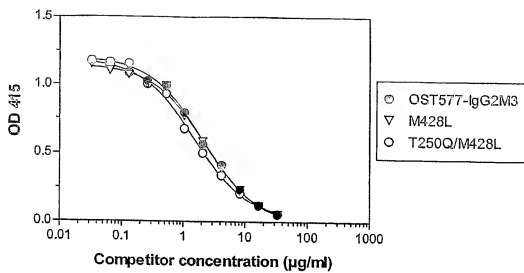


FIG. 16A

43/58

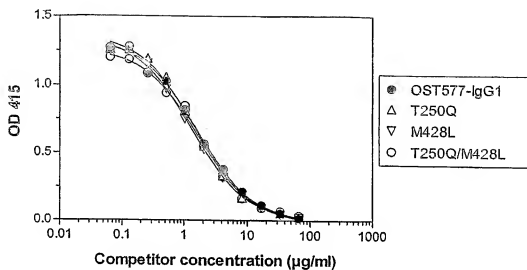


FIG. 16B

44/58

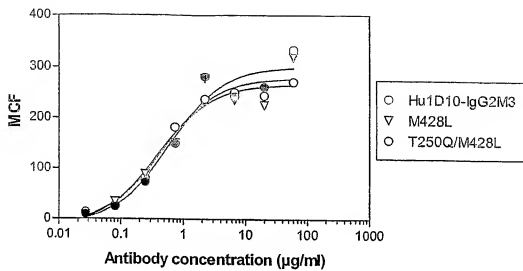


FIG. 17A

45/58

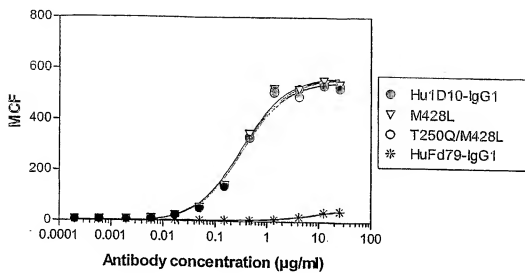


FIG. 17B



46/58

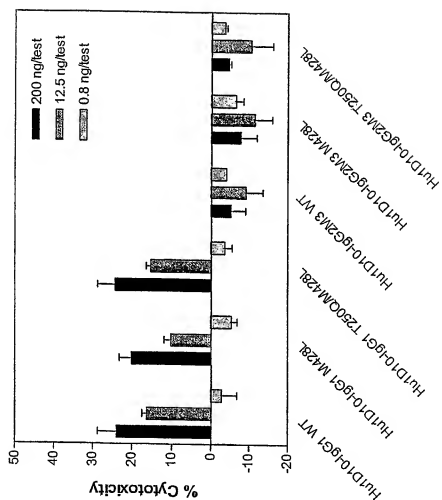


FIG. 18A



48/58

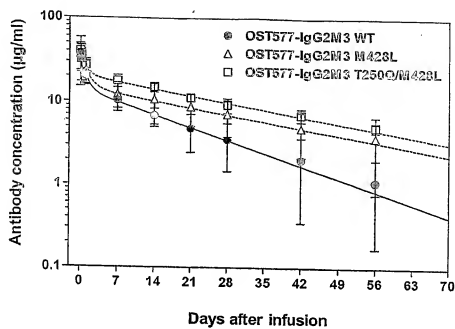


FIG. 19

49/58

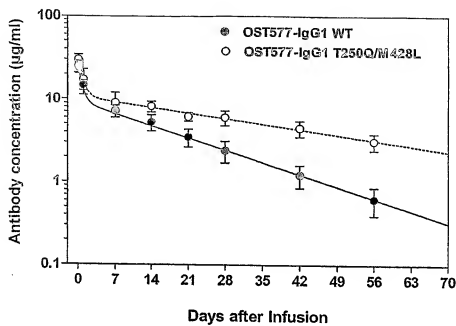


FIG. 20

50/58

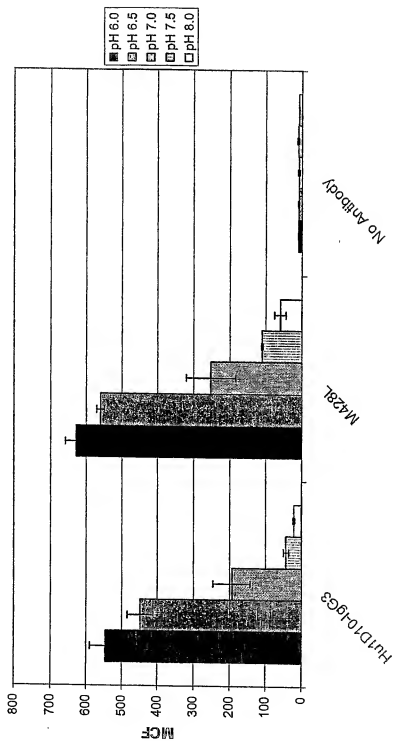


FIG. 21A

51/58

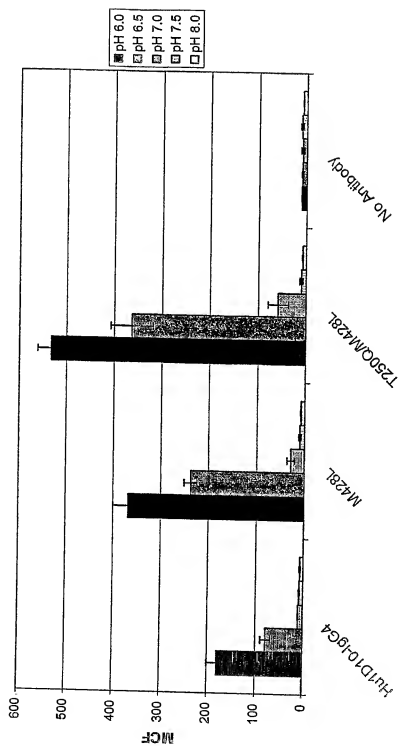


FIG. 21B

52/58

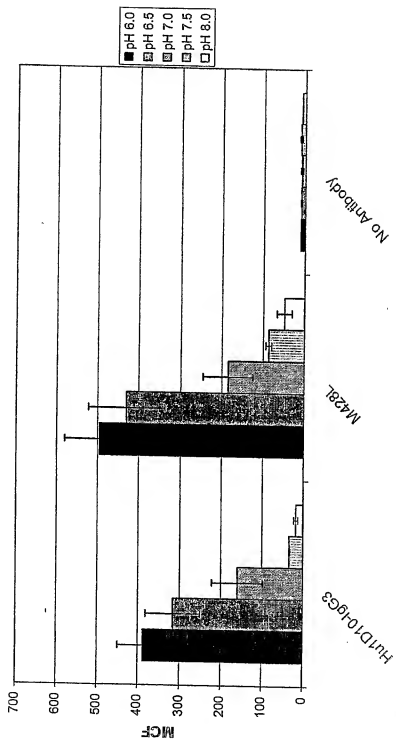


FIG. 21C

53/58

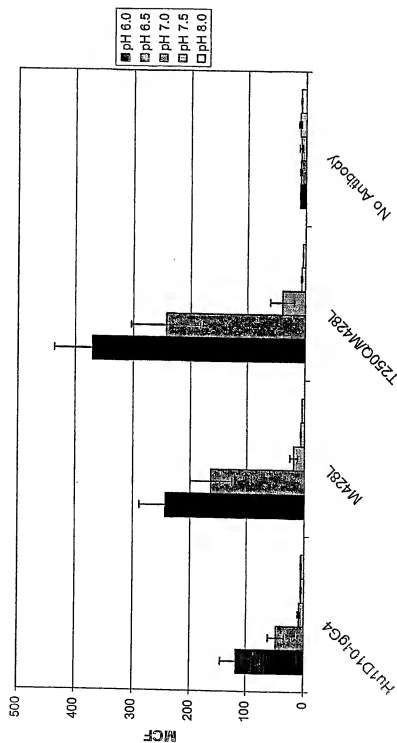


FIG. 21D



54/58

## Dacilizumab

Mature kappa light chain (SEQ ID NO:118)

DIQM~~Q~~SGPSTLSASVGD~~R~~VTTTSCASS~~S~~ISYMHYQ~~Q~~KPGKAPILLIYTTN~~L~~ASGVPARFSGSGSGTFTLT~~L~~ISSLPQ  
 DDEATY~~T~~YCHQ~~S~~RTSYPLTF~~Q~~QGT~~K~~VVEK~~T~~VAAPS~~V~~FI~~P~~PSD~~B~~QLKSGTASV~~V~~CLLNNFY~~P~~REAK~~V~~Q~~N~~KVDNALQSGNS  
 QESVTEQ~~S~~DKST~~S~~YLS~~S~~ST~~L~~TL~~S~~KADY~~E~~KHKVYACEVTHQGLSSPVTKSPNRGEC

Mature gamma-1 heavy chain with T250D (SEQ ID NO:119)

QVQLVQSGAEV~~K~~KPGSSV~~K~~VCKASGYTFTSYRMHW~~R~~QAPGQGLEWIGYINPSTGYTEYNQ~~K~~FKDKATITADESTNTA  
 YMELSS~~L~~RS~~E~~DTAVY~~C~~ARGGGV~~F~~DYWGQ~~G~~TLVT~~V~~SSASTKGPSV~~F~~PLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCLVKDY~~F~~PEPVT~~V~~SWN  
 SGALTSGVHT~~F~~PAVLQSSGLY~~S~~LS~~S~~SVTV~~P~~SSSLGTQ~~T~~YICNVNHKPSNT~~K~~V~~D~~KKVEPKSCDK~~T~~HTCP~~P~~CPAPELLGGP  
 SVFL~~F~~PPKPK~~D~~QLMI~~S~~RTPEVTCV~~V~~VDVSHEDPEV~~K~~FNWY~~V~~DGVEVHN~~A~~KTKPREEQYNSTYRV~~V~~SVLT~~V~~LHQD~~N~~LNGK  
 EYKCKVSNKALPAPIEK~~T~~ISKAKGQPREPQV~~T~~LP~~P~~SRDELTK~~N~~QVSL~~T~~CLVKGF~~P~~PSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYK~~T~~TPP  
 VLDSGSGFFLYSKLTV~~D~~KSRWQ~~G~~GNV~~F~~SCSV~~M~~HEALHNHYTQ~~S~~LSLSPGK

Mature gamma-1 heavy chain with T250Q (SEQ ID NO:120)

QVQLVQSGAEV~~K~~KPGSSV~~K~~VCKASGYTFTSYRMHW~~R~~QAPGQGLEWIGYINPSTGYTEYNQ~~K~~FKDKATITADESTNTA  
 YMELSS~~L~~RS~~E~~DTAVY~~C~~ARGGGV~~F~~DYWGQ~~G~~TLVT~~V~~SSASTKGPSV~~F~~PLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCLVKDY~~F~~PEPVT~~V~~SWN  
 SGALTSGVHT~~F~~PAVLQSSGLY~~S~~LS~~S~~SVTV~~P~~SSSLGTQ~~T~~YICNVNHKPSNT~~K~~V~~D~~KKVEPKSCDK~~T~~HTCP~~P~~CPAPELLGGP  
 SVFL~~F~~PPKPK~~D~~QLMI~~S~~RTPEVTCV~~V~~VDVSHEDPEV~~K~~FNWY~~V~~DGVEVHN~~A~~KTKPREEQYNSTYRV~~V~~SVLT~~V~~LHQD~~N~~LNGK  
 EYKCKVSNKALPAPIEK~~T~~ISKAKGQPREPQV~~T~~LP~~P~~SRDELTK~~N~~QVSL~~T~~CLVKGF~~P~~PSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYK~~T~~TPP  
 VLDSGSGFFLYSKLTV~~D~~KSRWQ~~G~~GNV~~F~~SCSV~~M~~HEALHNHYTQ~~S~~LSLSPGK

Mature gamma-1 heavy chain with M428L (SEQ ID NO:121)

QVQLVQSGAEV~~K~~KPGSSV~~K~~VCKASGYTFTSYRMHW~~R~~QAPGQGLEWIGYINPSTGYTEYNQ~~K~~FKDKATITADESTNTA  
 YMELSS~~L~~RS~~E~~DTAVY~~C~~ARGGGV~~F~~DYWGQ~~G~~TLVT~~V~~SSASTKGPSV~~F~~PLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCLVKDY~~F~~PEPVT~~V~~SWN  
 SGALTSGVHT~~F~~PAVLQSSGLY~~S~~LS~~S~~SVTV~~P~~SSSLGTQ~~T~~YICNVNHKPSNT~~K~~V~~D~~KKVEPKSCDK~~T~~HTCP~~P~~CPAPELLGGP  
 SVFL~~F~~PPKPK~~D~~QLMI~~S~~RTPEVTCV~~V~~VDVSHEDPEV~~K~~FNWY~~V~~DGVEVHN~~A~~KTKPREEQYNSTYRV~~V~~SVLT~~V~~LHQD~~N~~LNGK  
 EYKCKVSNKALPAPIEK~~T~~ISKAKGQPREPQV~~T~~LP~~P~~SRDELTK~~N~~QVSL~~T~~CLVKGF~~P~~PSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYK~~T~~TPP  
 VLDSGSGFFLYSKLTV~~D~~KSRWQ~~G~~GNV~~F~~SCSV~~M~~HEALHNHYTQ~~S~~LSLSPGK

Mature gamma-1 heavy chain with T250Q/M428L (SEQ ID NO:122)

QVQLVQSGAEV~~K~~KPGSSV~~K~~VCKASGYTFTSYRMHW~~R~~QAPGQGLEWIGYINPSTGYTEYNQ~~K~~FKDKATITADESTNTA  
 YMELSS~~L~~RS~~E~~DTAVY~~C~~ARGGGV~~F~~DYWGQ~~G~~TLVT~~V~~SSASTKGPSV~~F~~PLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCLVKDY~~F~~PEPVT~~V~~SWN  
 SGALTSGVHT~~F~~PAVLQSSGLY~~S~~LS~~S~~SVTV~~P~~SSSLGTQ~~T~~YICNVNHKPSNT~~K~~V~~D~~KKVEPKSCDK~~T~~HTCP~~P~~CPAPELLGGP  
 SVFL~~F~~PPKPK~~D~~QLMI~~S~~RTPEVTCV~~V~~VDVSHEDPEV~~K~~FNWY~~V~~DGVEVHN~~A~~KTKPREEQYNSTYRV~~V~~SVLT~~V~~LHQD~~N~~LNGK  
 EYKCKVSNKALPAPIEK~~T~~ISKAKGQPREPQV~~T~~LP~~P~~SRDELTK~~N~~QVSL~~T~~CLVKGF~~P~~PSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYK~~T~~TPP  
 VLDSGSGFFLYSKLTV~~D~~KSRWQ~~G~~GNV~~F~~SCSV~~M~~HEALHNHYTQ~~S~~LSLSPGK

Mature gamma-1 heavy chain with T250Q/M428F (SEQ ID NO:123)

QVQLVQSGAEV~~K~~KPGSSV~~K~~VCKASGYTFTSYRMHW~~R~~QAPGQGLEWIGYINPSTGYTEYNQ~~K~~FKDKATITADESTNTA  
 YMELSS~~L~~RS~~E~~DTAVY~~C~~ARGGGV~~F~~DYWGQ~~G~~TLVT~~V~~SSASTKGPSV~~F~~PLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCLVKDY~~F~~PEPVT~~V~~SWN  
 SGALTSGVHT~~F~~PAVLQSSGLY~~S~~LS~~S~~SVTV~~P~~SSSLGTQ~~T~~YICNVNHKPSNT~~K~~V~~D~~KKVEPKSCDK~~T~~HTCP~~P~~CPAPELLGGP  
 SVFL~~F~~PPKPK~~D~~QLMI~~S~~RTPEVTCV~~V~~VDVSHEDPEV~~K~~FNWY~~V~~DGVEVHN~~A~~KTKPREEQYNSTYRV~~V~~SVLT~~V~~LHQD~~N~~LNGK  
 EYKCKVSNKALPAPIEK~~T~~ISKAKGQPREPQV~~T~~LP~~P~~SRDELTK~~N~~QVSL~~T~~CLVKGF~~P~~PSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYK~~T~~TPP  
 VLDSGSGFFLYSKLTV~~D~~KSRWQ~~G~~GNV~~F~~SCSV~~M~~HEALHNHYTQ~~S~~LSLSPGK

55/58

## Dacilizumab (continued)

Mature gamma-2M3 heavy chain with T250D (SEQ ID NO:124)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGSSSVKVSCKASGYTFTSYRMHWVRQAPGQGLEWIGYINPSTGYTEYNQKFKDKATITADESTNTA  
 YMELSSLRSED<sup>1</sup>TA<sup>2</sup>VY<sup>3</sup>CARGGGVFDYWGQGLTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSWN  
 SGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSNFGTQTYTCNV<sup>4</sup>DHKPSNTKVDKTV<sup>5</sup>VERKCCVECP<sup>6</sup>PCPAPPA<sup>7</sup>AAAPSVFL  
 FPPKPKD<sup>8</sup>LMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREBQFNSTFRVSVLTVVHQD<sup>9</sup>WLNGKEYKC  
 KVS<sup>10</sup>NKGLPAPI<sup>11</sup>EKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSR<sup>12</sup>EEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESN<sup>13</sup>GQPENNYKTT<sup>14</sup>PPMLDS  
 DGSF<sup>15</sup>FLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNV<sup>16</sup>FC<sup>17</sup>SV<sup>18</sup>MHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSPGK

Mature gamma-2M3 heavy chain with T250Q (SEQ ID NO:125)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGSSSVKVSCKASGYTFTSYRMHWVRQAPGQGLEWIGYINPSTGYTEYNQKFKDKATITADESTNTA  
 YMELSSLRSED<sup>1</sup>TA<sup>2</sup>VY<sup>3</sup>CARGGGVFDYWGQGLTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSWN  
 SGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSNFGTQTYTCNV<sup>4</sup>DHKPSNTKVDKTV<sup>5</sup>VERKCCVECP<sup>6</sup>PCPAPPA<sup>7</sup>AAAPSVFL  
 FPPKPKD<sup>8</sup>LMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREBQFNSTFRVSVLTVVHQD<sup>9</sup>WLNGKEYKC  
 KVS<sup>10</sup>NKGLPAPI<sup>11</sup>EKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSR<sup>12</sup>EEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESN<sup>13</sup>GQPENNYKTT<sup>14</sup>PPMLDS  
 DGSF<sup>15</sup>FLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNV<sup>16</sup>FC<sup>17</sup>SV<sup>18</sup>MHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSPGK

Mature gamma-2M3 heavy chain with M428L (SEQ ID NO:126)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGSSSVKVSCKASGYTFTSYRMHWVRQAPGQGLEWIGYINPSTGYTEYNQKFKDKATITADESTNTA  
 YMELSSLRSED<sup>1</sup>TA<sup>2</sup>VY<sup>3</sup>CARGGGVFDYWGQGLTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSWN  
 SGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSNFGTQTYTCNV<sup>4</sup>DHKPSNTKVDKTV<sup>5</sup>VERKCCVECP<sup>6</sup>PCPAPPA<sup>7</sup>AAAPSVFL  
 FPPKPKD<sup>8</sup>LMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREBQFNSTFRVSVLTVVHQD<sup>9</sup>WLNGKEYKC  
 KVS<sup>10</sup>NKGLPAPI<sup>11</sup>EKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSR<sup>12</sup>EEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESN<sup>13</sup>GQPENNYKTT<sup>14</sup>PPMLDS  
 DGSF<sup>15</sup>FLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNV<sup>16</sup>FC<sup>17</sup>SV<sup>18</sup>LHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSPGK

Mature gamma-2M3 heavy chain with T250Q/M428L (SEQ ID NO:127)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGSSSVKVSCKASGYTFTSYRMHWVRQAPGQGLEWIGYINPSTGYTEYNQKFKDKATITADESTNTA  
 YMELSSLRSED<sup>1</sup>TA<sup>2</sup>VY<sup>3</sup>CARGGGVFDYWGQGLTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSWN  
 SGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSNFGTQTYTCNV<sup>4</sup>DHKPSNTKVDKTV<sup>5</sup>VERKCCVECP<sup>6</sup>PCPAPPA<sup>7</sup>AAAPSVFL  
 FPPKPKD<sup>8</sup>LMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREBQFNSTFRVSVLTVVHQD<sup>9</sup>WLNGKEYKC  
 KVS<sup>10</sup>NKGLPAPI<sup>11</sup>EKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSR<sup>12</sup>EEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESN<sup>13</sup>GQPENNYKTT<sup>14</sup>PPMLDS  
 DGSF<sup>15</sup>FLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNV<sup>16</sup>FC<sup>17</sup>SV<sup>18</sup>LHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSPGK

Mature gamma-2M3 heavy chain with T250Q/M428F (SEQ ID NO:128)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGSSSVKVSCKASGYTFTSYRMHWVRQAPGQGLEWIGYINPSTGYTEYNQKFKDKATITADESTNTA  
 YMELSSLRSED<sup>1</sup>TA<sup>2</sup>VY<sup>3</sup>CARGGGVFDYWGQGLTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSWN  
 SGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSNFGTQTYTCNV<sup>4</sup>DHKPSNTKVDKTV<sup>5</sup>VERKCCVECP<sup>6</sup>PCPAPPA<sup>7</sup>AAAPSVFL  
 FPPKPKD<sup>8</sup>LMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREBQFNSTFRVSVLTVVHQD<sup>9</sup>WLNGKEYKC  
 KVS<sup>10</sup>NKGLPAPI<sup>11</sup>EKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSR<sup>12</sup>EEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESN<sup>13</sup>GQPENNYKTT<sup>14</sup>PPMLDS  
 DGSF<sup>15</sup>FLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNV<sup>16</sup>FC<sup>17</sup>SV<sup>18</sup>FHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSPGK

56/58

**Fontolizumab (HuZAF®)**

Mature kappa light chain (SEQ ID NO:129)

DIQMTQSPSTLSASVGRDRTITCKASENVDTVVSWYQQKPGKAPKLLIYGASNRYTGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLSQ  
 PDDFATYYICGQSYNYPTFGQGTGKVRKRTVAAPSVFIFPPSDEQLKSGTASVCLLNNFYPRBAKQVQKVDNALQSGN  
 SQSEVTEQDEKIDSTYISLSSTLTLSKADYEKKHYACVTHQGLSSPVTKSFNRGEC

Mature gamma-1 heavy chain with T250D (SEQ ID NO:130)

QVQLVQSGAELKKPGSSVKVSCKASGYIFTSSWINWVKQAPGGQLEWIGRIDPSDGEVHYNQDFKDKATLTVDKSTNTA  
 YMELSSLRSEDTAVYYCARGFLPWADWGQGLTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPFLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSW  
 NSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSSLGTQTYICNVNHPKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCTPCPAPELLGG  
 PSVFLFPPKPKDQLMISRTEPVTCTVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREBQYNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNG  
 KEYKCKVSNKALPAPIEKTIISKAKGQPREPQVYITLPPSRDELTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTTP  
 PVLDSGDSGFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFCSCVMHEALHNHYTQKLSLSLSPGK

Mature gamma-1 heavy chain with T250Q (SEQ ID NO:131)

QVQLVQSGAELKKPGSSVKVSCKASGYIFTSSWINWVKQAPGGQLEWIGRIDPSDGEVHYNQDFKDKATLTVDKSTNTA  
 YMELSSLRSEDTAVYYCARGFLPWADWGQGLTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPFLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSW  
 NSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSSLGTQTYICNVNHPKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCTPCPAPELLGG  
 PSVFLFPPKPKDQLMISRTEPVTCTVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREBQYNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNG  
 KEYKCKVSNKALPAPIEKTIISKAKGQPREPQVYITLPPSRDELTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTTP  
 PVLDSGDSGFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFCSCVMHEALHNHYTQKLSLSLSPGK

Mature gamma-1 heavy chain with M428L (SEQ ID NO:132)

QVQLVQSGAELKKPGSSVKVSCKASGYIFTSSWINWVKQAPGGQLEWIGRIDPSDGEVHYNQDFKDKATLTVDKSTNTA  
 YMELSSLRSEDTAVYYCARGFLPWADWGQGLTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPFLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSW  
 NSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSSLGTQTYICNVNHPKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCTPCPAPELLGG  
 PSVFLFPPKPKDQLMISRTEPVTCTVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREBQYNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNG  
 KEYKCKVSNKALPAPIEKTIISKAKGQPREPQVYITLPPSRDELTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTTP  
 PVLDSGDSGFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFCSCVLHEALHNHYTQKLSLSLSPGK

Mature gamma-1 heavy chain with T250Q/M428L (SEQ ID NO:133)

QVQLVQSGAELKKPGSSVKVSCKASGYIFTSSWINWVKQAPGGQLEWIGRIDPSDGEVHYNQDFKDKATLTVDKSTNTA  
 YMELSSLRSEDTAVYYCARGFLPWADWGQGLTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPFLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSW  
 NSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSSLGTQTYICNVNHPKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCTPCPAPELLGG  
 PSVFLFPPKPKDQLMISRTEPVTCTVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREBQYNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNG  
 KEYKCKVSNKALPAPIEKTIISKAKGQPREPQVYITLPPSRDELTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTTP  
 PVLDSGDSGFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFCSCVLHEALHNHYTQKLSLSLSPGK

Mature gamma-1 heavy chain with T250Q/M428F (SEQ ID NO:134)

QVQLVQSGAELKKPGSSVKVSCKASGYIFTSSWINWVKQAPGGQLEWIGRIDPSDGEVHYNQDFKDKATLTVDKSTNTA  
 YMELSSLRSEDTAVYYCARGFLPWADWGQGLTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPFLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSW  
 NSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSSLGTQTYICNVNHPKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCTPCPAPELLGG  
 PSVFLFPPKPKDQLMISRTEPVTCTVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREBQYNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNG  
 KEYKCKVSNKALPAPIEKTIISKAKGQPREPQVYITLPPSRDELTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTTP  
 PVLDSGDSGFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFCSCVFLHEALHNHYTQKLSLSLSPGK

57/58

## Visilizumab (Nuvion®)

Mature kappa light chain (SEQ ID NO:135)

DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGRVITCSASSSVSYMNWYQKQKAPKRLIYDTSKSLASGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPE  
EDFATYVQCQNSNPPTFGGGTKVEIKRTVAAPSVFIFPPSDEQLKSGTASVVCCLMNFYPREAKVQWKVDNALQSGNS  
QESVTEQDSKDSTYSLSSTLTLSKADYEKHKVYACEVTHQGLSKSPVTKSFNRGEC

Mature gamma-2M3 heavy chain with T350D (SEQ ID NO:136)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCKASGYTFISYTMHWVRQAPQGGLWMMGYINPRSGYTHYNQKLKDKATLTADKSASTA  
YMLSSLSRSEDYAVYCARSAIYDYGFAIWGQGTLLTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFPEPV  
VSWNGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVPSNFGTQYTCNVDHKPSNTKVDKTVERRKCCVECPCCPAPPAAP  
SVFLFPKPKDGLMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQFNSTFRVVSVLTVVHQDWLNGK  
EYCKVSNKGLPAPIEKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSRREMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFPYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTP  
MLSDSGSFPLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFCSCVMHEALHNYHTQKSLSLSPSK

Mature gamma-2M3 heavy chain with T250Q (SEQ ID NO:137)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCKASGYTFISYTMHWVRQAPQGGLWMMGYINPRSGYTHYNQKLKDKATLTADKSASTA  
YMLSSLSRSEDYAVYCARSAIYDYGFAIWGQGTLLTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFPEPV  
VSWNGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVPSNFGTQYTCNVDHKPSNTKVDKTVERRKCCVECPCCPAPPAAP  
SVFLFPKPKDGLMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQFNSTFRVVSVLTVVHQDWLNGK  
EYCKVSNKGLPAPIEKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSRREMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFPYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTP  
MLSDSGSFPLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFCSCVMHEALHNYHTQKSLSLSPSK

Mature gamma-2M3 heavy chain with M428L (SEQ ID NO:138)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVCKASGYTFISYTMHWVRQAPQGGLWMMGYINPRSGYTHYNQKLKDKATLTADKSASTA  
YMLSSLSRSEDYAVYCARSAIYDYGFAIWGQGTLLTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFPEPV  
VSWNGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVPSNFGTQYTCNVDHKPSNTKVDKTVERRKCCVECPCCPAPPAAP  
SVFLFPKPKDGLMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQFNSTFRVVSVLTVVHQDWLNGK  
EYCKVSNKGLPAPIEKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSRREMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFPYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTP  
MLSDSGSFPLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFCSCVLEALHNYHTQKSLSLSPSK

Mature gamma-2M3 heavy chain with T250Q/M428L (SEQ ID NO:139)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVCKASGYTFISYTMHWVRQAPQGGLWMMGYINPRSGYTHYNQKLKDKATLTADKSASTA  
YMLSSLSRSEDYAVYCARSAIYDYGFAIWGQGTLLTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFPEPV  
VSWNGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVPSNFGTQYTCNVDHKPSNTKVDKTVERRKCCVECPCCPAPPAAP  
SVFLFPKPKDGLMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQFNSTFRVVSVLTVVHQDWLNGK  
EYCKVSNKGLPAPIEKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSRREMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFPYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTP  
MLSDSGSFPLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFCSCVLEALHNYHTQKSLSLSPSK

Mature gamma-2M3 heavy chain with T250Q/M428F (SEQ ID NO:140)

QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVCKASGYTFISYTMHWVRQAPQGGLWMMGYINPRSGYTHYNQKLKDKATLTADKSASTA  
YMLSSLSRSEDYAVYCARSAIYDYGFAIWGQGTLLTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFPEPV  
VSWNGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVPSNFGTQYTCNVDHKPSNTKVDKTVERRKCCVECPCCPAPPAAP  
SVFLFPKPKDGLMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNAKTKPREEQFNSTFRVVSVLTVVHQDWLNGK  
EYCKVSNKGLPAPIEKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSRREMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFPYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTP  
MLSDSGSFPLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFCSCVLEALHNYHTQKSLSLSPSK

58/58

M200

Mature kappa light chain (SEQ ID NO:141)

QIVLTQSPAIMSASLGERVMTTCASSSVSSNYLHWYQOKPGSAPMLNIYSTNLASGVPARFSGSGSGTSYSLTISSM  
EARDAAITYYCHQYLRSPPPTFGGQTKLEIKRTVAAPSVFIFPPSDEQLKSGTASVCLLNNMPTPREAKVQWVMDMLQSG  
NSQESVTEQDSKIDSTYSLSSTLTLSKADYEKHKVYACEVTHQGLSPPTKSFNRGEC

Mature gamma-4 heavy chain with T250D (SEQ ID NO:142)

QVQLKESGPGVLVAPSQSLSTICTISGFSLLIDYGVHVMVRQPPGKGLEWLVVIMSDGSSSTYNALKSRMTIRKDNKSQVFL  
LIMNSLQTDSDSAMYCARHGITYYGMTTTGDAIDYWGQGTSTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPFLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFP  
EPVTVSNWNGALTSQVHTFPVAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSSLGQTKYTCNVDDHKPSNTKVDKRVESKYGPPCPSPAPE  
FLGGPSVFLFPFKPKDMLISRTPEVTCVVVDVSDQEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNATKPREBQFNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQD  
WLNQKEYKCKVSNKGLPSSIEKTIKAKGQPREPQVYTLPPSQEEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNY  
KTTTPVILDSGGSFFLYSRLTVDKSRWQEGNVFSCSVMEALHNHYTQKLSLSLGLK

Mature gamma-4 heavy chain with T250Q (SEQ ID NO:143)

QVQLKESGPGVLVAPSQSLSTICTISGFSLLIDYGVHVMVRQPPGKGLEWLVVIMSDGSSSTYNALKSRMTIRKDNKSQVFL  
LIMNSLQTDSDSAMYCARHGITYYGMTTTGDAIDYWGQGTSTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPFLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFP  
EPVTVSNWNGALTSQVHTFPVAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSSLGQTKYTCNVDDHKPSNTKVDKRVESKYGPPCPSPAPE  
FLGGPSVFLFPFKPKDMLISRTPEVTCVVVDVSDQEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNATKPREBQFNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQD  
WLNQKEYKCKVSNKGLPSSIEKTIKAKGQPREPQVYTLPPSQEEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNY  
KTTTPVILDSGGSFFLYSRLTVDKSRWQEGNVFSCSVMEALHNHYTQKLSLSLGLK

Mature gamma-4 heavy chain with M428L (SEQ ID NO:144)

QVQLKESGPGVLVAPSQSLSTICTISGFSLLIDYGVHVMVRQPPGKGLEWLVVIMSDGSSSTYNALKSRMTIRKDNKSQVFL  
LIMNSLQTDSDSAMYCARHGITYYGMTTTGDAIDYWGQGTSTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPFLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFP  
EPVTVSNWNGALTSQVHTFPVAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSSLGQTKYTCNVDDHKPSNTKVDKRVESKYGPPCPSPAPE  
FLGGPSVFLFPFKPKDMLISRTPEVTCVVVDVSDQEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNATKPREBQFNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQD  
WLNQKEYKCKVSNKGLPSSIEKTIKAKGQPREPQVYTLPPSQEEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNY  
KTTTPVILDSGGSFFLYSRLTVDKSRWQEGNVFSCSVMEALHNHYTQKLSLSLGLK

Mature gamma-4 heavy chain with T250Q/M428L (SEQ ID NO:145)

QVQLKESGPGVLVAPSQSLSTICTISGFSLLIDYGVHVMVRQPPGKGLEWLVVIMSDGSSSTYNALKSRMTIRKDNKSQVFL  
LIMNSLQTDSDSAMYCARHGITYYGMTTTGDAIDYWGQGTSTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPFLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFP  
EPVTVSNWNGALTSQVHTFPVAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSSLGQTKYTCNVDDHKPSNTKVDKRVESKYGPPCPSPAPE  
FLGGPSVFLFPFKPKDMLISRTPEVTCVVVDVSDQEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNATKPREBQFNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQD  
WLNQKEYKCKVSNKGLPSSIEKTIKAKGQPREPQVYTLPPSQEEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNY  
KTTTPVILDSGGSFFLYSRLTVDKSRWQEGNVFSCSVMEALHNHYTQKLSLSLGLK

Mature gamma-4 heavy chain with T250Q/M428F (SEQ ID NO:146)

QVQLKESGPGVLVAPSQSLSTICTISGFSLLIDYGVHVMVRQPPGKGLEWLVVIMSDGSSSTYNALKSRMTIRKDNKSQVFL  
LIMNSLQTDSDSAMYCARHGITYYGMTTTGDAIDYWGQGTSTVTVSSASTKGPSVFPFLAPCSRSTSESTAALGCLVKDYFP  
EPVTVSNWNGALTSQVHTFPVAVLQSSGLYSLSSVTVTPSSSLGQTKYTCNVDDHKPSNTKVDKRVESKYGPPCPSPAPE  
FLGGPSVFLFPFKPKDMLISRTPEVTCVVVDVSDQEDPEVQFNWYVDGVEVHNATKPREBQFNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQD  
WLNQKEYKCKVSNKGLPSSIEKTIKAKGQPREPQVYTLPPSQEEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNY  
KTTTPVILDSGGSFFLYSRLTVDKSRWQEGNVFSCSVMEALHNHYTQKLSLSLGLK

Fig. 25

(19) World Intellectual Property  
Organization  
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date  
28 October 2004 (28.10.2004)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
WO 2004/092219 A3

(51) International Patent Classification<sup>7</sup>: C07K 16/00,  
16/46 // 16/28, 16/24

(21) International Application Number:  
PCT/US2004/011213

(22) International Filing Date: 9 April 2004 (09.04.2004)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:  
60/462,014 10 April 2003 (10.04.2003) US  
60/475,762 3 June 2003 (03.06.2003) US  
60/499,048 29 August 2003 (29.08.2003) US  
10/687,118 15 October 2003 (15.10.2003) US

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): PRO-  
TEIN DESIGN LABS, INC [US/US]; 34801 Campus  
Drive, Fremont, CA 94555 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): HINTON, Paul  
R. [US/US]; 321 Dunsnuir Terrace, #4, Sunnyvale, CA  
94085 (US). TSURUSHITA, Naoya [JP/US]; 3719 Red-  
wood Circle, Palo Alto, CA 94306 (US). TSO, J. Yun  
[US/US]; 445 Oakgrove Avenue, #6, Menlo Park, CA  
94025 (US). VASQUEZ, Maximiliano [US/US]; 3813  
Louis Road, Palo Alto, CA 94303 (US).

(74) Agents: HALLUN, Albert P. et al.; HOWREY SIMON  
ARNOLD & WHITE, Box 34, 301 Ravenswood Avenue,  
Menlo Park, CA 94025 (US).

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every  
kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM,  
AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN,  
CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI,  
GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE,  
KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD,  
MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NA, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG,  
PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SY, TJ, TM,  
TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM,  
ZW.

(84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every  
kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH,  
GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW),  
Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), Euro-  
pean (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR,  
GB, GR, HU, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK,  
TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW,  
ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

**Published:**

- with international search report
- before the expiration of the time limit for amending the  
claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of  
amendments

(88) Date of publication of the international search report:  
24 February 2005

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guid-  
ance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the begin-  
ning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: ALTERATION OF FCγR BINDING AFFINITIES OR SERUM HALF-LIVES OF ANTIBODIES BY MUTAGENESIS

(57) Abstract: The present invention provides for a modified antibody of class IgG, in which at least one amino acid from the heavy chain constant region selected from the group consisting of amino acid residues 250, 314, and 428 is substituted with another amino acid which is different from that present in the unmodified antibody, thereby altering the binding affinity for FcγR and/or the serum half-life in comparison to the unmodified antibody.



WO 2004/092219 A3

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

CT/US2004/011213

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	<p>HE X-Y ET AL: "Humanization and pharmacokinetics of a monoclonal antibody with specificity for both E- and P-selectin"</p> <p>JOURNAL OF IMMUNOLOGY, THE WILLIAMS AND WILKINS CO. BALTIMORE, US, vol. 160, no. 2, 15 January 1998 (1998-01-15), pages 1029-1035, XP002959848</p> <p>ISSN: 0022-1767</p> <p>abstract</p> <p>table 1</p> <p>figure 5</p>	9,13
X	<p>GHETIE V ET AL: "INCREASING THE SERUM PERSISTENCE OF AN IGG FRAGMENT BY RANDOM MUTAGENESIS"</p> <p>NATURE BIOTECHNOLOGY, NATURE PUBLISHING, US, vol. 15, no. 7, 1997, pages 637-640, XP000876642</p> <p>ISSN: 1087-0156</p> <p>cited in the application</p> <p>abstract</p> <p>page 638, left-hand column, paragraph 2 - right-hand column, paragraph 4</p> <p>table 1</p>	9,13
A	<p>US 5 834 597 A (TSO J YUN ET AL)</p> <p>10 November 1998 (1998-11-10)</p> <p>column 9, line 30 - line 52</p> <p>figures 1c,1d,2,4</p> <p>claims 6,11</p>	22-24
A	<p>MARTIN W LANCE ET AL: "Crystal structure at 2.8 ANG of an FcRn/heterodimeric Fc complex: Mechanism of pH-dependent binding"</p> <p>MOLECULAR CELL, vol. 7, no. 4, April 2001 (2001-04), pages 867-877, XP002305812</p> <p>ISSN: 1097-2765</p> <p>cited in the application</p> <p>abstract</p> <p>page 874, right-hand column, paragraph 1 - page 875, left-hand column, paragraph 1</p>	1-27
A	<p>US 5 530 101 A (QUEEN CARY L ET AL)</p> <p>25 June 1996 (1996-06-25)</p> <p>cited in the application</p> <p>the whole document</p>	15-18

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.

CT/US2004/011213

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	US 6 329 511 B1 (LANDOLFI NICHOLAS F ET AL) 11 December 2001 (2001-12-11) cited in the application the whole document -----	19-21
P,X	HINTON PAUL R ET AL: "Engineered human IgG antibodies with longer serum half-lives in primates." JOURNAL OF BIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY, vol. 279, no. 8, 20 February 2004 (2004-02-20), pages 6213-6216, XP002305813 ISSN: 0021-9258 the whole document -----	1-14, 16-27



# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No.

CT/US2004/011213

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 02060919	A	08-08-2002	CA 2431600 A1	08-08-2002
			EP 1355919 A2	29-10-2003
			WO 02060919 A2	08-08-2002
			US 2003190311 A1	09-10-2003
US 5834597	A	10-11-1998	AU 725821 B2	19-10-2000
			AU 3208397 A	09-12-1997
			CA 2255826 A1	27-11-1997
			EP 0966485 A1	29-12-1999
			JP 2002506420 T	26-02-2002
			WO 9744362 A1	27-11-1997
US 5530101	A	25-06-1996	AT 251639 T	15-10-2003
			AU 7548196 A	20-02-1997
			AU 671949 B2	19-09-1996
			AU 9172691 A	22-07-1992
			CA 2098404 A1	20-06-1992
			DE 69133326 D1	13-11-2003
			DE 69133326 T2	05-08-2004
			EP 1386932 A1	04-02-2004
			EP 0566647 A1	27-10-1993
			JP 6503963 T	12-05-1994
			JP 3276369 B2	22-04-2002
			KR 231090 B1	15-11-1999
			WO 9211018 A1	09-07-1992
			US 2003229208 A1	11-12-2003
			US 2004049014 A1	11-03-2004
			US 5693761 A	02-12-1997
			US 5585089 A	17-12-1996
			US 6180370 B1	30-01-2001
			US 5693762 A	02-12-1997
			US 2004058414 A1	25-03-2004
			AT 133452 T	15-02-1996
			AT 183753 T	15-09-1999
			AU 647383 B2	24-03-1994
			AU 5153290 A	13-08-1990
			BG 61095 B2	31-10-1996
			CA 2006865 A1	28-06-1990
			CA 2328851 A1	28-06-1990
			CN 1043875 A , B	18-07-1990
			CZ 9104186 A3	13-10-1993
			DE 10075005 I1	23-11-2000
			DE 10075038 I1	01-03-2001
			DE 68925536 D1	07-03-1996
			DE 68925536 T2	20-06-1996
			DE 68929061 D1	30-09-1999
			DE 68929061 T2	27-04-2000
			DK 94198 A	16-07-1998
			DK 119191 A	19-06-1991
			EP 1477497 A1	17-11-2004
			EP 0451216 A1	16-10-1991
			EP 0682040 A1	15-11-1995
			EP 0939127 A2	01-09-1999
			ES 2081974 T3	16-03-1996
			ES 2136760 T3	01-12-1999
			FI 108797 B1	28-03-2002
			HK 1014718 A1	14-07-2000
			HR 920500 A1	30-04-1996

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

CT/US2004/011213

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
US 5530101	A	HU 9500236 A3 IE 20000331 A1	28-09-1995 21-02-2001
US 6329511	B1 11-12-2001	US 2002091240 A1 AU 764211 B2 AU 2033100 A CA 2352572 A1 CN 1334821 T EP 1135415 A1 JP 2002531466 T WO 0032634 A1	11-07-2002 14-08-2003 19-06-2000 08-06-2000 06-02-2002 26-09-2001 24-09-2002 08-06-2000